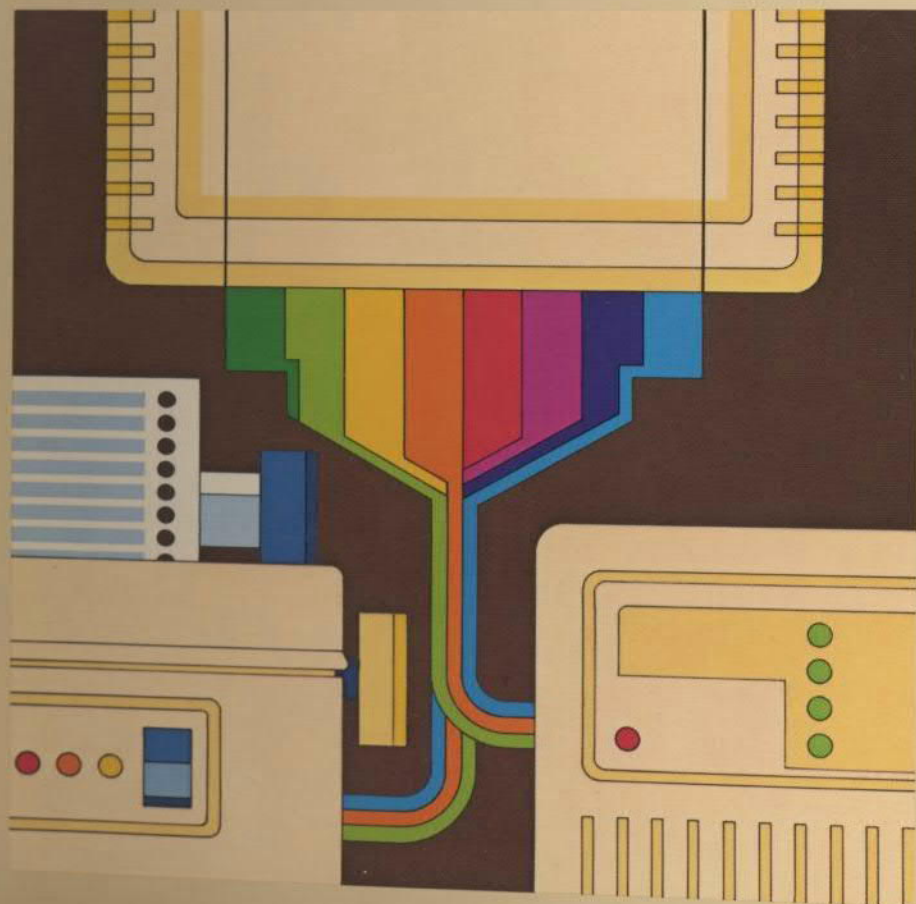


Apple II



Super Serial Card

Installation and Operating Manual



Notice

Apple Computer Inc. reserves the right to make improvements in the product described in this manual at any time and without notice.

Disclaimer of All Warranties And Liability

Apple Computer Inc. makes no warranties, either express or implied, with respect to this manual or with respect to the software described in this manual, its quality, performance, merchantability, or fitness for any particular purpose. Apple Computer Inc. software is sold or licensed "as is." The entire risk as to its quality and performance is with the buyer. Should the programs prove defective following their purchase, the buyer (and not Apple Computer Inc., its distributor, or its retailer) assumes the entire cost of all necessary servicing, repair, or correction and any incidental or consequential damages. In no event will Apple Computer Inc. be liable for direct, indirect, incidental, or consequential damages resulting from any defect in the software, even if Apple Computer Inc. has been advised of the possibility of such damages. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of implied warranties or liability for incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

This manual is copyrighted. All rights are reserved. This document may not, in whole or part, be copied, photocopied, reproduced, translated or reduced to any electronic medium or machine readable form without prior consent, in writing, from Apple Computer Inc.

© 1981 by Apple Computer Inc.
10260 Bandley Drive
Cupertino, California 95014
(408) 996-1010

The word Apple and the Apple logo are registered trademarks of Apple Computer Inc.

Reorder Apple Product #A2L0044

WARNING: This equipment has been certified to comply with the limits for a Class B computing device, pursuant to Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC Rules. Only peripherals (computer input/output devices, terminals, printers, etc.) certified to comply with the Class B limits may be attached to this computer. Operation with non-certified peripherals is likely to result in interference to radio and TV reception.

Apple II

Super Serial Card

Installation and Operating Manual

Please read this manual before attempting to install the Super Serial Card in the Apple Computer. Incorrect installation could cause permanent damage to both the Super Serial Card and the Apple.

RADIO AND TELEVISION INTERFERENCE

The equipment described in this manual generates and uses radio frequency energy. If it is not installed and used properly, that is in strict accordance with our instructions, it may cause interference to radio and television reception.

This equipment has been tested and complies with the limits for a Class B computing device in accordance with the specifications in Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC rules. These rules are designed to provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that the interference will not occur in a particular installation.

You can determine whether your computer is causing interference by turning it off. If the interference stops, it was probably caused by the computer. If your computer does cause interference to radio or television reception, you can try to correct the interference by using one or more of the following measures:

- Turn the TV or radio antenna until the interference stops.
- Move the computer to one side or the other of the TV or radio.
- Move the computer farther away from the TV or radio.
- Plug the computer into an outlet that is on a different circuit from the TV or radio. (That is, make certain the computer and the TV or radio are on circuits controlled by different circuit breakers or fuses.)

If necessary, you should consult your dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. You may find the following booklet prepared by the Federal Communications Commission helpful:

"How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems"

This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, Stock number 004-000-00345-4.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE

vii

Chapter 1

GETTING STARTED

1

- 1 Unpacking
- 2 A Close Look
- 2 Preparing Cable and Clamp Assembly
- 3 Attaching Internal Cable to SSC

Chapter 2

PRINTER MODE

5

- 5 Preparing the SSC for Printer Mode
- 6 Setting the Switches
 - 6 Commonly Used Settings
 - 6 Baud Rate
 - 7 Data Format and Parity
 - 7 Carriage Return Delay
 - 8 Line Width and Video On/Off
 - 8 Generate <LF> Out
 - 8 Special Switches
- 9 Installation Procedure
- 10 External Cable and Connector
- 11 Using the SSC in Printer Mode
 - 11 With a Printer
 - 11 With a Terminal
- 11 Printer Mode Commands
 - 12 Command Formats
 - 12 The Command Character
 - 13 Printer Mode Command Summary
 - 15 Commands That Change Switch Settings
 - 15 Baud Rate--<n>B
 - 15 Data Format--<n>D
 - 15 Parity--<n>P
 - 16 Set Time Delay--<n>C, <n>L, <n>F
 - 17 Generate <CR> On Column Overflow--C
 - 17 Generate <LF> Out--L <E/D>
 - 17 Mask (Suppress) <LF> In--M <E/D>
 - 17 Reset the SSC--R

```

17 Other Commands
18   Translate Lowercase Characters--<n>T
18   Zap (Suppress) Control Characters--Z
18   Find Keyboard--F <E/D>
18   XOFF Recognition--X <E/D>
19   Tab in BASIC--T <E/D>

```

Chapter 3

COMMUNICATIONS MODE

21

```

21 Preparing the SSC for Communications Mode
22 Setting the Switches
22   Commonly Used Settings
22   Baud Rate
23   Data Format and Parity
24   Generate <LF> Out
24   Special Switches
24 Installation Procedure
26   External Cable and Connector
26 Using the SSC in Communications Mode
27 Communications Mode Commands
27   Command Formats
28   The Command Character
28   Communications Mode Command Summary
30   Commands That Change Switch Settings
30     Baud Rate--<n>B
30     Data Format--<n>D
30     Parity--<n>P
31     Generate <LF> Out--L <E/D>
31     Mask (Suppress) <LF> In--M <E/D>
31     Reset the SSC--R
31 Other Commands
32   Set Time Delays--<n>C, <n>L, <n>F
32   Translate Lowercase Characters--<n>T
33   Zap (Suppress) Control Characters--Z
33   Find Keyboard--F <E/D>
33   XOFF Recognition--X <E/D>
34   Specify Screen Slot--<n>S
34   Echo Characters on the Screen--E <E/D>
34 Terminal Mode
35   Terminal Mode Commands
35     Enter Terminal Mode--T
36     Transmit a Break Signal--B
36     Special Characters--S <E/D>
36     Quit (Exit from) Terminal Mode--Q
36 A Terminal Mode Example

```

Chapter 4

HOW THE SSC WORKS

37

- 37 Serial Data Communication
- 38 Parallel Data in the Apple II
- 39 Serial Data for Long Distances
- 39 Data Conversion
- 40 RS-232-C Data Formats
- 40 RS-232-C Signals
- 41 Modems
- 42 Modem Eliminators
- 43 SSC Modes and Configurations
- 45 Theory of Operation
- 46 Addressing and Control Logic
- 46 ROM/RAM Space
- 47 Registers in Peripheral I/O Space
- 47 The ACIA
- 48 Data Input and Output
- 48 Data Bus
- 48 Jumper Block

Appendix A

FIRMWARE

49

- 49 Pascal 1.1 Firmware Protocol
- 50 I/O Routine Entry Points
- 51 Device Identification
- 52 SSC Firmware Memory Usage
- 52 Zero Page Locations
- 53 Scratchpad RAM Locations
- 54 Peripheral Card I/O Space
- 55 SSC Entry Points
- 55 Monitor ROM Entry Points
- 55 BASIC Entry Points
- 56 Pascal 1.0 Entry Points
- 56 Pascal 1.1 Entry Points
- 57 Other Special Firmware Locations
- 58 SSC Firmware Listings

Appendix B

APPLE INTERFACE CARD EMULATION

91

- 91 Old Serial Interface Card Emulation
- 92 P8 Emulation POKes
- 94 P8A Emulation POKes
- 95 Other Emulation Mode Differences

- 96 Old Communications Card Commands
- 96 Switch to Terminal Mode--<CTRL-T>
- 96 Bypass Terminal Mode--<CTRL-R>
- 96 XOFF--<CTRL-S>
- 96 Parallel Card Commands
- 96 Line Width n and Video Off--<CTRL-I><n>N
- 96 Line Width 40 and Video On--<CTRL-I>I
- 96 Disable Automatic Linefeed--<CTRL-I>K

Appendix C

SPECIFICATIONS AND SCHEMATICS

97

- 97 SSC Specifications
- 98 Connector Pin Assignments
- 99 Jumper Block Wiring
- 100 Schematic Diagram

Appendix D

ASCII CODE TABLE

101

Appendix E

TROUBLESHOOTING HINTS

105

Appendix F

ERROR CODES

109

GLOSSARY

111

FIGURES AND TABLES

119

INDEX

123

PREFACE

The Super Serial Card (SSC) provides a two-way serial interface to a wide variety of devices, including printers, terminals, plotters, and other computers. All these devices can be connected to the SSC either directly or via modem.

The SSC replaces both the P8 and P8A variety of Apple II Serial Interface Card, although it does not manipulate all specific Apple II memory locations in the same way. The SSC also replaces the Apple II Communications Card, and supports Terminal Mode. Finally, the SSC supports Apple II parallel interface card software commands.

The Super Serial Card conforms to the Electronic Industries Association (EIA) interface definitions A through E. (To obtain a copy of the EIA RS-232-C Standard, write to the EIA Engineering Department, Electronics Industries Association, 2001 Eye Street, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20006.)

The SSC can be configured to the attached external device in three ways: (1) by setting switches on the card itself, (2) by typing in commands at the keyboard under the Monitor, Integer BASIC, Applesoft or DOS, or (3) by issuing commands from assembly language, BASIC or Pascal programs. The SSC can be configured and operated by programs in Integer BASIC, APPLESOFT, Pascal, and assembly language.

How you prepare, install and use the Super Serial Card depends on what you connect to it:

- Read Chapter 1 for unpacking and cable clamp preparation instructions.
- If you are going to connect a printer, terminal or some other device directly to the SSC, then read the first four sections of Chapter 2. (Many commonly used switch settings are listed in Table 2-1 for your convenience.) You only need to read the section Printer Mode Commands of Chapter 2 if you need special commands to change the SSC's characteristics.
- If you are going to connect a device to the SSC via a modem or similar communications equipment, then read the first four sections of Chapter 3. (Switch settings for many Communications Mode applications are listed in Table 3-1.) You only need to read the section Communications Mode Commands of Chapter 3 if you need special commands to change the SSC's characteristics.
- If you want to use the Apple II as an unintelligent terminal connected via a modem, read the section Terminal Mode of Chapter 3.
- Troubleshooting Hints are discussed in Appendix E.

The SSC also emulates ("imitates") the Apple II Serial Interface Card (both the P8 and P8A varieties), and supports many of the software commands used by the Apple II parallel printer interface card and the Apple II Communications Card. These are all discussed in Appendix B.

Chapter 4 explains how the SSC works, both in everyday terms (Serial Data Communication Simply Explained) and from an engineering viewpoint (Theory of Operation). The Theory of Operation section is keyed to the schematic diagram in Appendix C. Chapter 4 also contains a section on SSC modes and configurations.

Appendix A discusses SSC firmware and its entry points in the SSC ROM, as well as the Apple II memory locations the firmware uses.

Appendix C contains SSC specifications and connector pin assignments, and its schematic diagram.

Appendix D lists the ASCII codes and their equivalents. Appendix E has troubleshooting hints. Appendix F explains the SSC error codes.

A glossary explains the meaning of most important terms as they apply to the SSC.

The Reference Card summarizes the switch settings and commands for the SSC Printer Mode and Communications Mode.

There are three symbols that set off information of special importance:



This symbol points to a paragraph that contains especially useful information.



Watch out! This symbol precedes a paragraph that warns you to be careful.



This symbol precedes a warning that you are about to harm hardware or destroy data.

CHAPTER 1

GETTING STARTED

This chapter takes you through the first steps of getting acquainted with your Super Serial Card (SSC). After unpacking the SSC and examining it, you will assemble the short internal cable (if it is not already assembled) that connects the 10-pin cable socket on the SSC to the 25-pin socket at the back of the Apple II case.

UNPACKING

As you unpack your Super Serial Card (Figure 1-1), check the contents against the items described on the packing list.

Fill out the pre-addressed warranty card and mail it in. If any items are missing, contact the dealer you purchased the SSC from.

You will need a shielded external cable (not provided as part of the SSC package) to connect the external device--the printer, modem, terminal, or other computer--to your Apple II. Suitable cables are available through your Apple dealer.

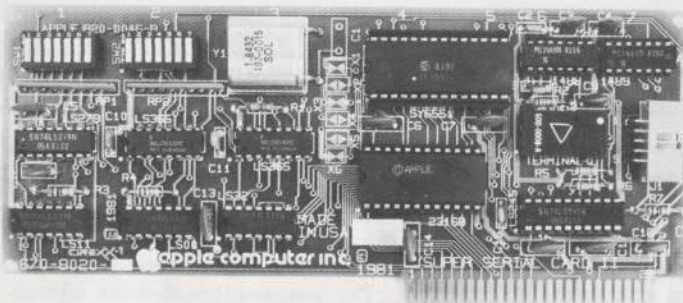


Figure 1-1. Photo of the Super Serial Card

A CLOSE LOOK

Let's examine the Super Serial Card for a moment. Pick up the SSC carefully and put it on a flat surface oriented as shown in Figure 1-1. Now use Figure 1-2 to help identify the chief parts of the SSC. Those that you will have to deal with as you prepare it for installation are:

- The jumper block. This ordinarily points toward the word **TERMINAL**; if you attach a modem to the SSC, you will turn this around so the arrow points toward the word **MODEM** (Chapter 3).
- The switches. The left group is numbered from SW1-1 through SW1-7; the right group is numbered from SW2-1 through SW2-7. You can see the characters "SW1" and "SW2" printed on the SSC.
- The edge connector. It is important not to touch the gold fingers on this connector: they must make a clean electrical contact in the Apple II connector slot when you install the SSC (Chapter 2 or Chapter 3).
- The cable socket. The next section of this chapter explains how to install the short internal cable between the SSC and the Apple II case.

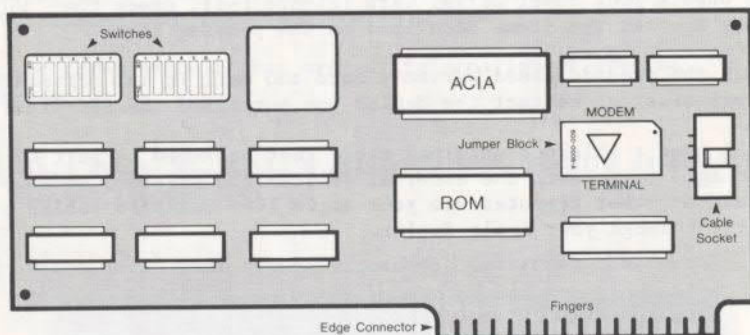


Figure 1-2. Line Drawing of the SSC

PREPARING CABLE AND CLAMP ASSEMBLY

Before preparing and installing the SSC, you may need to prepare the clamp assembly for the internal cable that will go from the SSC to the back of the Apple II's case. The components of this clamp assembly are shown in Figure 1-3. If these components are already assembled, skip to the next section, Attaching the Internal Cable to the SSC.

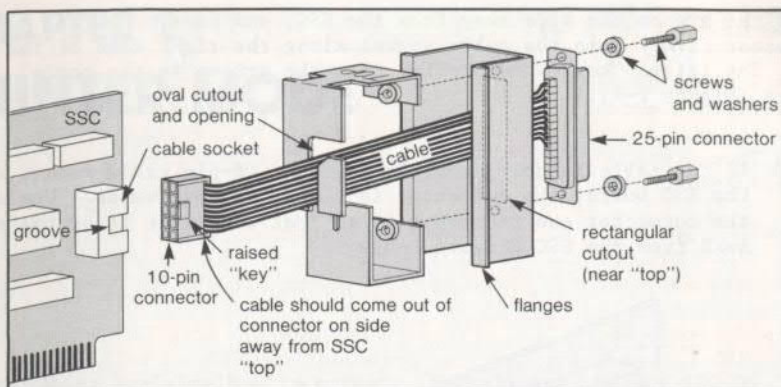


Figure 1-3. Components of Internal Cable and Clamp Assembly

Lay the short cable down as shown in Figure 1-3. Pick up the clamp piece that has the word TOP stamped on one end. Hold this clamp piece with the word TOP facing away from you, and the oval cutout toward the smaller connector on the cable. Bend the cable slightly, and insert it into the oval cutout through the opening; then straighten the cable in the cutout so that it moves easily.

The other clamp piece has flanges (Figure 1-3) and a rectangular opening that is closer to one end (its top end) than to the other. Hold this clamp piece with its top end away from you and its flanges facing the 25-pin connector end of the cable. Then tilt the connector and feed it completely through the rectangular cutout.

Now slide the two clamp pieces all the way down the cable until they are right up against the 25-pin connector, and their screw holes line up with the connector's screw holes. Slide the washers onto the screws and then thread the screws a couple of turns into the lined-up holes. Don't screw them in very far.

ATTACHING INTERNAL CABLE TO SSC

This step in the preparation of your Super Serial Card is simple to do, but you must do it carefully.



It is very important to connect the cable to the SSC correctly. Improper connection of the cable to the SSC may result in damage to the Apple and the SSC; such damage is NOT covered by your warranty.

Lay the SSC down on a flat surface, component-side up and gold fingers at the lower right. Examine the 10-pin end of the cable: the wires come out of the SIDE of the connector--the same side as the raised "key" in the plastic (Figure 1-3). Hold the connector so

the wires are on the side away from the SSC, and insert the connector firmly into the cable socket along the right edge of the SSC. The raised "key" should slide into the groove in the cable socket (Figure 1-4).



If the cable is now jammed between the 10-pin cable socket and the SSC board, the connector is plugged in backwards. Unplug the connector and reconnect it so that the cable is on the side AWAY from the SSC (Figure 1-5).

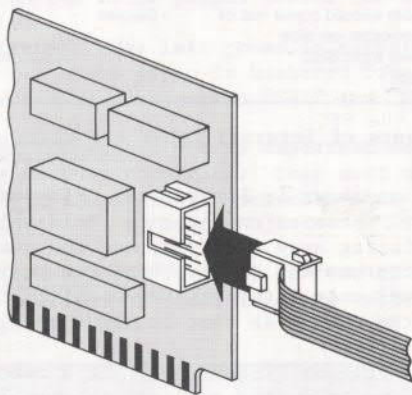


Figure 1-4. Sliding the "Key" into the Groove

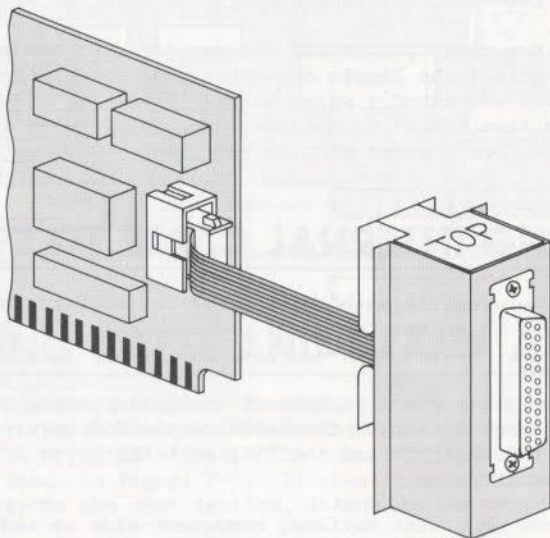


Figure 1-5. Internal Cable Attached Correctly to SSC

CHAPTER 2

PRINTER MODE

This chapter explains how to prepare, install and use the SSC in Printer Mode, and change the SSC's activities via commands.

PREPARING THE SSC FOR PRINTER MODE

The SSC is ready to operate in Printer Mode when the jumper block and switches SW1-5 and SW1-6 are correctly positioned (Figure 2-1).

If the triangle on the jumper block is pointing down toward the word MODEM, remove the block (using an IC Extractor, if necessary) and carefully reinsert it so the triangle is pointing toward TERMINAL.

Using a pointed object, set switch SW1-5 OFF and switch SW1-6 ON as shown in Figure 2-1.

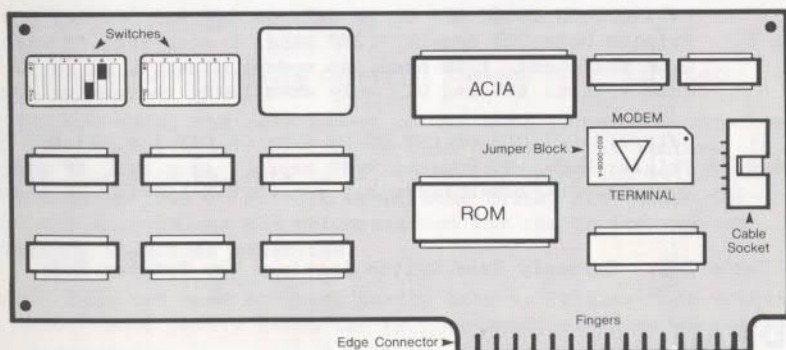


Figure 2-1. SSC Set for Printer Mode



When the jumper block is pointing toward TERMINAL, it is acting as a Modem Eliminator. Therefore, DO NOT connect a separate Modem Eliminator, or it will cancel the effect of the jumper block, and the attached device will not work.

SETTING THE SWITCHES

Use a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen, to flip the appropriate tiny switches on the SSC. A switch is ON when the top of the switch rocker is pushed in, and OFF when the bottom is in. The following subsections explain what settings to use.

COMMONLY USED SETTINGS

Table 2-1 lists the switch settings you can use for direct connection, via the SSC, of some commonly used printers. Most printers can use any one of several setups.

| Printer | Switch Settings, Cable Connections, Other Information |
|------------------------|---|
| IDS 560 Paper Tiger | SW1: OFF OFF OFF ON OFF ON ON SW2: ON ON * * OFF OFF OFF Printer Mode, HW Hndshk, 9600 baud, 1 stop bit, ** width IDS SW1: - - - ON ON OFF OFF SW2: - - - - OFF - - SSC/IDS pins: 3/3, 7/7, 20/20; all IDS jumpers removed |
| NEC 5510 Spinwriter | SW1: OFF ON ON ON OFF OFF OFF SW2: ON ON * * OFF OFF ON P8A Mode, ETX/ACK, 1200 baud, 1 stop bit, ** line width NEC switches: OFF ON OFF OFF OFF OFF ON ON SSC/NEC pins: 2/2, 3/3, 7/7, 20/6&8; 4&5 tied on NEC end May need keystroke to force first ETX after power-up. |
| NEC 5510 Spinwriter | SW1: OFF ON ON ON OFF ON OFF SW2: ON ON * * OFF OFF ON Printer Mode, hardware handshake, rest same as above NEC switches: OFF ON OFF OFF OFF ON ON SSC/NEC pins: 3/3, 6/6&8, 7/7, 20/20; 4&5 NOT tied |
| Qume Sprint 5 | SW1: OFF ON ON ON OFF ON ON SW2: ON OFF * * OFF OFF OFF Printer Mode, HW Hndshk, 1200 baud, 1 stop bit, ** width Qume switches: 1200 baud, no modem; pins: 3, 4, 7, 20 Qume asserts RTS and DTR only when ready to receive data |
| Qume Sprint 9/35 | SW1: OFF OFF OFF ON OFF ON ON SW2: ON OFF * * OFF OFF OFF Printer Mode, HW Hndshk, 9600 baud, 1 stop bit, ** width Qume ETX-ACK/XON-XOFF switch set to ETX-ACK for HW Hndshk |

Table 2-1. Commonly Used Switch Settings for Printer Mode

BAUD RATE

No matter what type of printer or terminal you connect to the SSC, the SSC is going to pass information between the Apple II and the device at a certain prearranged speed, called the baud rate. Since the Apple II can usually send and receive information faster than what is connected to it, the simplest way to determine the baud rate is to consult the user manual for the device you will connect. Find out what rate is the fastest the device can handle (up to 19,200 baud). Once you know this, you are ready to set the baud rate switches on the SSC.

| Baud | SW1-1 | SW1-2 | SW1-3 | SW1-4 | Baud | SW1-1 | SW1-2 | SW1-3 | SW1-4 |
|------------|-------|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 50 | ON | ON | ON | OFF | 1200 | OFF | ON | ON | ON |
| 75 | ON | ON | OFF | ON | 1800 | OFF | ON | ON | OFF |
| 110* | ON | ON | OFF | OFF | 2400 | OFF | ON | OFF | ON |
| 135** | ON | OFF | ON | ON | 3600 | OFF | ON | OFF | OFF |
| 150 | ON | OFF | ON | OFF | 4800 | OFF | OFF | ON | ON |
| 300 | ON | OFF | OFF | ON | 7200 | OFF | OFF | ON | OFF |
| 600 | ON | OFF | OFF | OFF | 9600 | OFF | OFF | OFF | ON |
| (* 109.92) | | (** 134.58) | | | 19200 | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

Table 2-2. Baud Rate Switch Settings



Make sure the printer or terminal you connect is set (with its own switches, dials or thumb wheels) to the SAME baud rate! If you don't, the SSC will send and receive unrecognizable garbage.

DATA FORMAT AND PARITY

The SSC sends each character (such as a "3" or an "F" or a Carriage Return) as a string of zeroes and ones (bits). The way it can send a character in Printer Mode, using switch settings, is this:

- first a single start bit to signal to the printer or terminal that a character is coming;
- then a string of 8 data bits representing the character;
- no error-checking parity bit;
- one or two stop bits to signal the end of a character.

For Printer Mode, the only aspect of the data format you can change with switch settings is whether to send one stop bit or two. If you set the baud rate switches to 50, 75 or 110 baud, set switch SW2-1 OFF (two stop bits). For all other baud rates, set switch SW2-1 ON (one stop bit) unless the documentation for the device you are connecting specifies otherwise.

The SSC does not send or check parity bits in Printer Mode unless you select some parity using the <n>P command, explained later in this chapter.

CARRIAGE RETURN DELAY

If you connect a slow printer to the SSC, and it has no handshaking capability, you may need to set switch SW2-2 ON to cause the Apple II to wait 1/4 second after a Carriage Return (<CR>). This gives

the print head assembly time to reposition to the beginning of the next line. Otherwise, set switch SW2-2 OFF (no delay).

Additional delay values (32 ms and 2 s) are available via the <n>C command described later in this chapter.

LINE WIDTH AND VIDEO ON/OFF

Switches SW2-3 and SW2-4 determine the printer or terminal line width and also turn the Apple II video screen on or off.

If you are connecting a printer to the SSC, select the appropriate switch settings for the number of characters the printer can fit on a line. If you set the line width to 40, the Apple II video screen is turned on, since it too can display 40 characters per line, and so can display an exact replica of what is being printed.

If you plan to connect a terminal to the SSC, set the switches for the number of characters the terminal screen can display on a line--usually 72 or 80. For these line widths, the Apple II video screen is off.

| Line Width | Video Screen | SW2-3 | SW2-4 |
|---------------|--------------|-------|-------|
| 40 char/line | on | ON | ON |
| 72 char/line | off | ON | OFF |
| 80 char/line | off | OFF | ON |
| 132 char/line | off | OFF | OFF |

Table 2-3. Line Width and Video Switch Settings

The switch settings that turn off the Apple II video screen take effect only after PR# under BASIC or DOS. <CTRL-I> commands are still recognized, and cause the message APPLE SSC: to appear on the Apple II video screen.

GENERATE <LF> OUT

If you are connecting a printer to the SSC, check the printer's user manual to see if it automatically generates a linefeed (<LF>) after a carriage return (<CR>). If it does not, set switch SW2-5 ON.

If your printer does automatically generate a linefeed after a carriage return, or if you are connecting some other device that does not need automatic linefeed generation, set switch SW2-5 OFF.

SPECIAL SWITCHES

Switch SW2-6 controls forwarding of interrupts to the Apple II. Since the Apple II and II+ do not handle interrupts, set SW2-6 OFF.

Normally, switch SW1-7 is ON and switch SW2-7 is OFF. In the rare cases where the device uses pin 19, Secondary Clear To Send, in place of pin 4 or 20, Clear To Send, set SW1-7 OFF and SW2-7 ON.

Your Super Serial Card is now ready to install and use in Printer Mode.

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

This section explains how to install the SSC and its internal cable in the Apple II. If the cable clamp is not already assembled, do so now, following the instructions given in Chapter 1.



Before connecting or disconnecting anything on the Apple, turn off the power with the switch at the back left corner of the Apple case. **THIS IS ABSOLUTELY NECESSARY.** If you try to connect or disconnect anything from the inside of your Apple when the power is on, you are likely to damage the circuits.

Do not unplug the Apple, just turn it off. If you unplug the Apple, you will isolate it from earth ground and leave it vulnerable to static discharges.

Remove the Apple cover by pulling up on the two back corners of the cover until the two corner fasteners pop apart. Slide the cover back until it is free of the case and then lift the cover off.

Look inside the Apple and locate the power supply case--the rectangular metal box along the left inside the Apple II. To avoid damaging the SSC, touch the power supply case with one hand; this discharges any static charge that may be on your clothes or body.

Along the back inside edge of the Apple you will see eight long narrow slots called connector slots. The connector slots are numbered from 0 at the left to 7 at the right. The numbers are printed along the back edge behind the connector slots. For use with Pascal, install the SSC in slot #1 for a printer, or slot #3 for a terminal. For use with BASIC, install the SSC in any slot from #1 through #7.



Handle the Super Serial Card as you would handle an expensive phonograph record. Grasp it only by the corners or edges, and do not touch the components or pins, especially the gold fingers on the edge connector.

There are three deep notches along the back of the Apple II case. Temporarily set the SSC down near the desired slot. Then take the clamp assembly and slide it down into the notch closest to the slot that the SSC will be in. Tighten the screws until the connector assembly can no longer be moved in the opening.

Grasp the upper corners of the SSC and insert the gold fingers of the edge connector into the slot in the back of the Apple, rear edge first. Gently push the front edge of the card down until it is level and firmly seated.

Note that the outer ends of the screws in the clamp assembly can act as nuts. They are threaded and can receive screws from the printer or terminal connector, to ensure a good connection with the Apple.

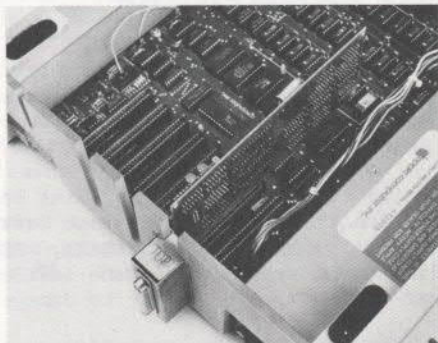


Figure 2-2. SSC in Slot #1 and Clamp Assembly in Notch

Slide the Apple case top plate in place and press down on the rear corners until the corner fasteners pop into place. The Super Serial Card is now installed.

EXTERNAL CABLE AND CONNECTOR

The SSC cable connector you installed in the notch is a standard DB-25 connector with 25 pins. Ten pins of the connector are connected internally to the SSC. Connector pin assignments are listed in Appendix C.

You will need a cable to connect your external device to the SSC connector on the Apple II. Shielded cables with 25-pin connectors on one end are available from your Apple dealer.

The cable must have internal shielding, with the shielding properly terminated at both ends, to prevent electromagnetic interference to nearby radios, television sets, and communication equipment. This shielding is necessary for the system to comply with Class B Federal Communications Commission limits as defined by Subpart J of Part 15 of the FCC rules. Unshielded cables are not recommended.



Make sure that all devices are connected to the same grounded AC power circuit (three-wire wall outlet) as the Apple II. Connecting ungrounded equipment to your Apple II can cause severe electrical damage.

USING THE SSC IN PRINTER MODE

Printer Mode allows you to use the SSC with a local (that is, directly connected) printer or terminal, as well as other local serial devices. After installing the SSC, you can control its operation from a BASIC, Pascal or assembly-language program, or even directly from the keyboard. The two parts of this section explain the easiest way to get the SSC up and running from the keyboard with a printer or terminal.

WITH A PRINTER

To use the SSC with a printer, do the following:

- Make sure the jumper block points toward **TERMINAL**.
- Under BASIC or DOS, boot the Apple II and then type in **PR#s** to send output to the printer (with the SSC in slot **s**).
- Under Pascal, boot the Apple II and then use the **F(iler T(ransfer** command to send output data to **#6:** or **PRINTER:** (with the SSC in slot **#1**).
- If the printer doesn't work, refer to Appendix E for troubleshooting hints, or consult your Apple dealer.

WITH A TERMINAL

To use the SSC with a terminal, do the following:

- Make sure the jumper block points toward **TERMINAL**.
- Under BASIC or DOS, boot the Apple II and then type in **PR#s** and **IN#s** to route both input and output through the terminal (with the SSC in slot **#s**).
- Under Pascal, boot the Apple II and then use the terminal as the input/output console (with the SSC in slot **#3**).
- If the terminal doesn't work, refer to Appendix E for troubleshooting hints, or consult your Apple dealer.

PRINTER MODE COMMANDS

You can issue any of the commands described in this section by embedding them in a computer program. Under BASIC, DOS or the Apple Monitor, you can also enter them directly at the Apple (or terminal) keyboard.

In a BASIC program, put the control character and command in a PRINT statement. In a Pascal program, issue the command in a WRITE or WRITELN statement.

When you enter the command character (usually <CTRL-I>; see below), the prompting message APPLE SSC: appears on the display screen. Subsequent characters, up to <RETURN>, will be interpreted as an SSC command. Pressing the left arrow key before pressing <RETURN> cancels the command and causes the APPLE SSC: prompt to reappear.

Many of these commands override the physical switch settings on the SSC. This makes it unnecessary to open the Apple II case and manually flip the SSC switches. To change the values back to the physical switch settings, reboot or reset the Apple II, or type in the Reset command described below.

COMMAND FORMATS

All commands are preceded by the Printer Mode command character (usually <CTRL-I>, see below) and followed by <RETURN>. The notation <CTRL-I> means "hold down the CTRL key while pressing I." There are three types of command formats:

- a number <n> followed by an uppercase letter (for example, 4D to set Data Format 4)
- simply an uppercase letter (for example, R to Reset the SSC)
- an uppercase letter followed by a space and then either E to Enable or D to Disable a feature (for example, L D to Disable automatic generation of linefeed characters)

The allowable range of <n> is given in each command description (next section). The choice of Enable or Disable is indicated as <E/D>.



The underscore character () before the <E/D> in Enable/Disable commands is merely a reminder that a space is required there.

The SSC checks only numbers and the first letters of commands and options. All such letters must be uppercase. Further letters, which you can add to assist your memory, have no effect on the SSC. For example, X(OFF E(nable is the same as X E. The SSC ignores invalid commands.

THE COMMAND CHARACTER

The normal command character in Printer Mode is <CTRL-I> (decimal 9; Appendix D). You can send the command character itself through the SSC by typing it twice in a row: <CTRL-I><CTRL-I>; no <RETURN> is required after this command. This special command allows you to transmit the command character without affecting the operation of the SSC, and without having to change to another command character and then back again later.

If you want to change the command character from <CTRL-I> to <CTRL-something else>, type <CTRL-I><CTRL-something else>. For example, to change the command character to <CTRL-W>, type <CTRL-I><CTRL-W>. To change back, type <CTRL-W><CTRL-I>. No <RETURN> is required after either of these commands.

The command character <CTRL-I> is ASCII code 9. Here is how to generate this character in BASIC and Pascal:

| | |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Integer BASIC: | PRINT "*command" *embedded <CTRL-I> |
| Applesoft BASIC: | PRINT CHR\$(9): "command" |
| Pascal: | WRITELN (CHR(9), 'command'); |

PRINTER MODE COMMAND SUMMARY

Table 2-4 is a summary of the commands available in Printer Mode. Some details, explained fully in the remainder of this chapter, have been omitted from the table for the sake of brevity. Commands marked with an asterisk are not supported by Pascal.

| Format | Command Name | Values | Interpretation |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| <n>B | Baud Rate | 0 - 15 | see Table 2-5 |
| <n>C | <CR> Delay | 0 1 2 3 | no delay 32 milliseconds 250 milliseconds (1/4 s) 2 seconds |
| <n>D | Data Format | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 | 8 data bits, 1 stop bit 7 data bits, 1 stop bit 6 data bits, 1 stop bit 5 data bits, 1 stop bit 8 data bits, 2 stop bits 7 data bits, 2 stop bits 6 data bits, 2 stop bits 5 data bits, 2 stop bits |
| <n>F | <FF> Delay | 0 1 2 3 | no delay (default) 32 milliseconds 250 milliseconds (1/4 s) 2 seconds |
| <n>L | <LF> Delay | 0 1 2 3 | no delay (default) 32 milliseconds 250 milliseconds (1/4 s) 2 seconds |
| <n>P | Parity | 0,2,4,6 1 3 5 7 | no parity (default = 0P) odd parity even parity MARK (parity bit always 1) SPACE (parity bit always 0) |
| * <n>T | Translate Lowercase (LC) | 0 1 2 3 | change LC to UC (default) leave LC (possible garbage) LC to UC inverse; leave UC LC to UC; UC to inverse |
| * C | Column Overflow | | auto-<CR> at column's end |
| * R | Reset the SSC | | reset SSC + PR#0 and IN#0 |
| * Z | Zap <CTRL> | | ignore all <CTRL> commands |
| F <E/D> | Find Keyboard | E or D | accept keyboard entries |
| L <E/D> | Generate <LF> Out | E or D | send <LF> out after <CR> |
| M <E/D> | Mask <LF> In | E or D | drop <LF> in after <CR> |
| * T <E/D> | Tab in BASIC | E or D | recognize BASIC tabs |
| X <E/D> | XOFF Recognition | E or D | detect XOFF; await XON |
| * Not supported by Pascal. | | | |

Table 2-4. Printer Mode Commands

COMMANDS THAT CHANGE SWITCH SETTINGS

The group of commands discussed in this section either directly override the SSC switch settings, or affect related behavior of the SSC. The Reset command restores the switch selections.

Baud Rate- $\langle n \rangle$ B

This command overrides the physical settings of switches SW1-1 through SW1-4 on the SSC. For example, to change the baud rate to 135 baud, type in $\langle \text{CTRL-I} \rangle 4\text{B} \langle \text{RETURN} \rangle$.

| $\langle n \rangle =$ | SSC Baud Rate | $\langle n \rangle =$ | SSC Baud Rate |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| 0 | use SW1-1 to SW1-4 | 8 | 1200 |
| 1 | 50 | 9 | 1800 |
| 2 | 75 | 10 | 2400 |
| 3 | 109.92 (110) | 11 | 3600 |
| 4 | 134.58 (135) | 12 | 4800 |
| 5 | 150 | 13 | 7200 |
| 6 | 300 | 14 | 9600 |
| 7 | 600 | 15 | 19200 |

Table 2-5. Baud Rate Selections

Data Format- $\langle n \rangle$ D

With this command you can override the settings of switch SW2-1. The table below shows how many data and stop bits correspond to each value of $\langle n \rangle$. For example, $\langle \text{CTRL-I} \rangle 2\text{D} \langle \text{RETURN} \rangle$ causes the SSC to transmit each character in the form: one start bit (always transmitted), six data bits, and one stop bit.

| $\langle n \rangle =$ | Data Bits | Stop Bits |
|-----------------------|-----------|---|
| 0 | 8 | 1 |
| 1 | 7 | 1 |
| 2 | 6 | 1 |
| 3 | 5 | 1 |
| 4 | 8 | 2 (1 with Parity options 4 through 7) |
| 5 | 7 | 2 |
| 6 | 6 | 2 |
| 7 | 5 | 2 (1-1/2 with Parity options 0 through 3) |

Table 2-6. Data Format Selections

Parity- $\langle n \rangle$ P

You can use this command to determine the kind of parity the SSC is to generate when sending data and check for when receiving data. In general, parity checking is not needed in Printer Mode. However, there are five parity options available (Table 2-4).

| <n>= | Parity to Use |
|--------------|---|
| 0, 2, 4 or 6 | none (default value) |
| 1 | odd parity (odd total number of ones) |
| 3 | even parity (even total number of ones) |
| 5 | MARK parity (parity bit always 1) |
| 7 | SPACE parity (parity bit always 0) |

Table 2-7. Parity Selections

For example, type <CTRL-I>1P<RETURN> to cause the SSC to transmit and check for odd parity. Odd parity means that the high bit of every character is 0 if there is already an odd number of 1 bits in that character, or 1 if there is otherwise an even number of 1 bits in the character, making the total always odd. This is an easy (but not foolproof) way to check data for transmission errors. Parity errors are recorded in a status byte (Appendix F).

Set Time Delay-<n>C, <n>L, <n>F

Some printers are slow and do not provide a "printer busy" or handshake signal to the Apple II. The <n>C command causes the Apple II to delay a specified amount of time, after sending a carriage return character, before sending another group (usually another line) to it. This gives the print head enough time to return to the left side of the page so it is ready to continue printing.

The <n>C command overrides the setting of switch SW2-2 on the SSC. That switch provides only two choices: no delay or a 250 millisecond delay.

The <n>L command allows time after a linefeed character for a printer platen to turn so the paper is vertically positioned to receive the next line.

The <n>F command allows time after a form feed character for the printer platen to move the paper form to the top of the next page (typically a longer time than a linefeed).

| <n>= | Time Delay |
|------|-------------------------------|
| 0 | none |
| 1 | 32 milliseconds |
| 2 | 250 milliseconds (1/4 second) |
| 3 | 2 seconds |

Table 2-8. Time Delay Selections

Consult the user manual for the printer to find out how much time it takes to move its print head and platen, and so to determine an appropriate set of values for these three delays. The idea is to have at least enough time for the printer parts to move the required distance, but not so much time that overall printing speed is slowed down drastically. A typical set for a VERY slow printer would be `<CTRL-I>2C<RETURN>`, `<CTRL-I>2L<RETURN>`, `<CTRL-I>3F<RETURN>`; that is, the SSC waits 250 milliseconds after transmitting carriage returns, 250 milliseconds after transmitting linefeeds, and 2 seconds after transmitting form feed characters.

Generate <CR> On Column Overflow-C

Typing `<CTRL-I>C<RETURN>` causes the SSC to generate a carriage return character automatically any time the column count exceeds the printer line width.



Once this is on, only clearing the high-order bit at location \$578+s (where s is the slot the SSC is in) can turn this option back off. This option is normally off.

Generate <LF> Out-L_<E/D>

You can use this command to have the SSC automatically generate and transmit a linefeed character after each carriage return character. This overrides the setting of switch SW2-5. For example, you can type `<CTRL-I>L E<RETURN>` to cause your printer to print listings or double-spaced manuscripts for editing.

Mask (Suppress) <LF> In-M_<E/D>

If you type `<CTRL-I>M E<RETURN>`, the SSC will suppress any incoming linefeed character that immediately follows a carriage return character.

Reset the SSC-R

Typing `<CTRL-I>R<RETURN>` has the same effect as sending a PR#0 and an IN#0 to a BASIC program and then resetting the SSC. This keyboard command cancels all previous commands to the SSC and puts the physical switch settings back into force.

OTHER COMMANDS

The commands described here affect the handling of characters and tabs. The Translate command determines how characters will appear on the video screen. The Z and F commands prevent the SSC from responding to control characters or ALL characters coming from the keyboard, respectively. The X command causes the SSC to respond to the XON/XOFF software protocol. Finally, the T command implements the tabbing feature of BASIC.

Translate Lowercase Characters-<n>T

The Apple II Monitor "translates" all incoming lowercase characters into uppercase ones before sending them to the video screen or to a BASIC program. The SSC offers four translation options:

<n>= What to Do with Lowercase Characters

- 0 Change all lowercase characters to uppercase ones before passing them to a BASIC program or to the video screen. This is the way the Apple II monitor handles lowercase.
- 1 Pass along all lowercase characters unchanged. The appearance of the lowercase characters on the Apple II screen is undefined (garbage).
- 2 Display lowercase characters as uppercase inverse characters (that is, as black characters on a white background).
- 3 Pass lowercase characters to programs unchanged, but display lowercase as uppercase, and uppercase as inverse uppercase (that is, as black characters on a white background).

Table 2-9. Lowercase Character Displays

Zap (Suppress) Control Characters-Z

Typing <CTRL-I>Z<RETURN> prevents the SSC from recognizing any further control characters (and hence commands) whether coming from the keyboard or contained in a stream of characters moving through the SSC.

If you issue the Z command described here, all further commands are ignored; this is useful if the data you are transmitting contains bit patterns that the SSC can mistake for control characters.



The only way to reinstate command recognition after the Z command is to reinitialize the SSC, or clear the high-order bit at location \$5F8+s (where s is the slot in which the SSC is installed).

Find Keyboard-F-<E/D>

You can protect incoming data from disruption by keystrokes with this command. For example, you can include an F D command in a program, followed by a routine that retrieves data coming in through the SSC, followed by F E later in the program. Default is F E.

XOFF Recognition-X-<E/D>

Typing <CTRL-I>X E<RETURN> causes the SSC to look for any XOFF (decimal 19; Appendix D) character coming from a device attached to the SSC, and to respond to it by halting transmission of characters

until the SSC receives an XON (decimal 17; Appendix D) from the device, signalling the SSC to continue transmission. In Printer Mode, the default value of this command is X D.



In Printer Mode, full duplex communication may not work with XOFF recognition turned on, so be careful.

Tab in BASIC-T_<E/D>

If you type in <CTRL-I>T E<RETURN>, the BASIC horizontal position counter is left equal to the column count. All TABs work, including back-tabs. TABs beyond column 40 require a POKE to location 36, as usual. Commas only work as far as column 40, and BASIC programs will be listed in 40-column format.

PREPARING THE SSC FOR COMMUNICATIONS MODE

The SSC is ready to operate in Communications Mode when the power switch is on, and the SSC is in the "ready" state.

For the example in this chapter, we assume that the SSC is in the "ready" state. The SSC is in the "ready" state when the SSC is in the "ready" state.

When the SSC is in the "ready" state, the SSC is in the "ready" state.



CHAPTER 3

COMMUNICATIONS MODE

This chapter explains how to prepare, install and use the SSC in Communications Mode, and change the SSC's activities via commands.

PREPARING THE SSC FOR COMMUNICATIONS MODE

The SSC is ready to operate in Communications Mode when the jumper block and switches SW1-5 and SW1-6 are correctly positioned.

If the triangle on the jumper block is pointing up toward the word MODEM, remove the block (using an IC Extractor, if necessary) and reinsert it with the triangle pointing toward MODEM (Figure 3-1).

Using a pointed object, set switches SW1-5 and SW1-6 both ON as shown in Figure 3-1. This puts the SSC in Communications Mode.

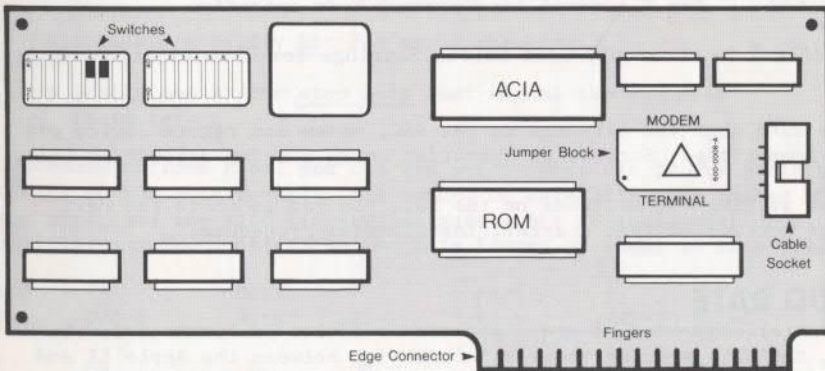


Figure 3-1. SSC Set for Communications Mode

SETTING THE SWITCHES

Use the tip of a ballpoint pen or some other sharp object to flip the appropriate tiny switches on the SSC. A switch is ON when the top of the switch rocker is pushed in. The following subsections explain what settings to use.

COMMONLY USED SETTINGS

Table 3-1 lists the switch settings you can use for connection to various devices and services via the SSC and a modem.

Application Switch Settings, Cable Connections, Other Information

| | |
|---|--|
| Apple II via modem | SW1: ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW2: ON ON * * OFF OFF OFF Comm Mode, 300 baud, 8 data, 1 stop, * * parity If using SSC in each Apple, set both the same; for local connection, second jumper block points toward TERMINAL. |
| Apple III via modem | SW1: ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW2: ON ON * * OFF OFF OFF Comm Mode, 300 baud, 8 data, 1 stop, * * parity Set Apple III RS-232-C Device Control Block to same values (See Apple III <u>Standard Device Drivers</u> manual). |
| Printer via modem | SW1: ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW2: ON OFF * * OFF OFF OFF Comm Mode, 300 baud, 7 data, 1 stop, * * parity Baud rate is limited by modem and transmission lines; some modems can also use 1200 baud; SW1-7 is always ON, and SW2-7 is always OFF; SCTS hookup is at remote modem. |
| Dow Jones News and Quotes Reporter | SW1: ON OFF OFF ON ON ON ON SW2: ON OFF - ON OFF OFF OFF Comm Mode, 300 baud, 7 data, 1 stop, no parity Sample program at end of this chapter sets same traits. Use T command for Terminal Mode operation. |

Table 3-1. Commonly Used Switch Settings for Communications Mode

Make sure that the settings on the SSC, modem and remote device are all compatible. Successful operation using a modem depends on this.

After setting the switches on the SSC, you can go on to the next major section of this chapter, Installation Procedure.

BAUD RATE

No matter what kind of modem and remote device you connect to the SSC, the SSC is going to pass information between the Apple II and the device at a certain prearranged speed, called the baud rate. Since the Apple II can usually send and receive information faster than what is connected to it, the simplest way to determine the maximum baud rate you can use is to consult the user manual for the modem and remote device you will connect. Find out what rate is the fastest they both can handle. Once you know this, you are ready to

set the baud rate switches on the SSC. The following table shows the correct switch positions.

| Baud | SW1-1 | SW1-2 | SW1-3 | SW1-4 | Baud | SW1-1 | SW1-2 | SW1-3 | SW1-4 |
|------------|-------|-------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 50 | ON | ON | ON | OFF | 1200 | OFF | ON | ON | ON |
| 75 | ON | ON | OFF | ON | 1800 | OFF | ON | ON | OFF |
| 110* | ON | ON | OFF | OFF | 2400 | OFF | ON | OFF | ON |
| 135** | ON | OFF | ON | ON | 3600 | OFF | ON | OFF | OFF |
| 150 | ON | OFF | ON | OFF | 4800 | OFF | OFF | ON | ON |
| 300 | ON | OFF | OFF | ON | 7200 | OFF | OFF | ON | OFF |
| 600 | ON | OFF | OFF | OFF | 9600 | OFF | OFF | OFF | ON |
| (* 109.92) | | (** 134.58) | | | 19200 | OFF | OFF | OFF | OFF |

Table 3-2. Baud Rate Switch Settings



If you are connecting a printer or terminal at the other end of the modem, make sure that it is set (with its own switches, dials or thumb wheels) to the SAME baud rate! If you don't, the SSC will send and receive unrecognizable garbage.

DATA FORMAT AND PARITY

The SSC sends each character (such as a "7" or an "H" or a "?") as a string of zeroes and ones (bits). The way it can send a character in Communications Mode, using switch settings, is this:

- first a single start bit to signal to the printer or terminal that a character is coming;
- then a string of 7 or 8 data bits representing the character;
- possibly a parity bit for error checking;
- lastly one or two stop bits that signal the end of a character.

For Communications Mode, you can use switch settings to change three aspects of the data format: the number of data bits, the number of stop bits, and the kind (if any) of parity bit to send. Switches SW2-1 through SW2-4 determine the data format as shown in this table.

| Stop Bits | SW2-1 | Data Bits | SW2-2 | Parity Bits | SW2-3 | SW2-4 |
|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|-------------|-------|-------|
| 1 | ON | 8 | ON | none | -- | ON |
| 2 | OFF | 7 | OFF | odd | ON | OFF |
| | | | | even | OFF | OFF |

Table 3-3. Data Format Selections

If SW2-1 is OFF, the number of stop bits will be 1 instead of 2 if both 8 data bits (SW2-2 ON) and a parity bit (SW2-4 OFF) have been selected.

To determine the correct combination of switch settings, consult the literature describing the device or timesharing service you plan to connect to the SSC in this mode.

The most commonly used format for ASCII data is: 7 data bits, 1 stop bit, and no parity bit (SW2-1 and SW2-4 ON; SW2-2 OFF).

If you set the data rate switches to 50, 75 or 110 baud, choose a switch combination that specifies 2 stop bits; for all data rates 135 baud or higher, use 1 stop bit (switch SW2-1 ON), unless device or timesharing service literature specifies otherwise.



To set the SSC for a data format different from those shown in this table, or to change the data format temporarily, use the SSC commands described later in this chapter.

GENERATE <LF> OUT

If the remote device (for example, a faraway printer) does not automatically generate linefeeds after carriage returns, and it desperately needs them, then set switch SW2-5 ON. Otherwise set SW2-5 OFF.

In Communications Mode, the SSC automatically discards incoming linefeeds that immediately follow carriage returns, unless you use the M D command as described later in this chapter.

SPECIAL SWITCHES

Switch SW2-6 controls forwarding of interrupts to the Apple II. Since the Apple II and II+ do not handle interrupts, set SW2-6 OFF.

For Communications Mode, set SW1-7 ON and SW2-7 OFF.

Your Super Serial Card is now ready to install and use in Communications Mode.

INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

This section explains how to install the SSC and its internal cable in the Apple II. If the cable clamp is not already assembled, do so now, following the instructions given in Chapter 1.



Before connecting or disconnecting anything on the Apple, turn off the power with the switch at the back left corner of the Apple case. **THIS IS ABSOLUTELY NECESSARY.** If you try to connect or disconnect anything from the inside of your Apple when the power is on, you are likely to damage the circuits.

Do not unplug the Apple, just turn it off. If you unplug the Apple, you will isolate it from earth ground and leave it vulnerable to static discharges.

Remove the Apple cover by pulling up on the two back corners of the cover until the two corner fasteners pop apart. Slide the cover back until it is free of the case and then lift the cover off.

Look inside the Apple and locate the power supply case--the rectangular metal box along the left inside the Apple II. To avoid damaging the SSC, touch the power supply case with one hand; this discharges any static charge that may be on your clothes or body.

Along the back inside edge of the Apple you will see eight long narrow slots called connector slots. The connector slots are numbered from 0 at the left to 7 at the right. The numbers are printed along the back edge behind the connector slots. For use with Pascal and a modem, install the SSC in slot #2. For use with BASIC, install the SSC in any slot from #1 through #7.



Handle the Super Serial Card as you would handle an expensive phonograph record. Grasp it only by the corners or edges, and do not touch the components or pins, especially the gold fingers on the edge connector.

There are three deep notches along the back of the Apple II case. Temporarily set the SSC down near the desired slot. Then take the clamp assembly and slide it down into the notch closest to the slot that the SSC will be in. Tighten the screws until the connector assembly can no longer be moved in the opening.

Grasp the upper corners of the SSC and insert the gold fingers of the edge connector into the slot in the back of the Apple, rear edge first. Gently push the front edge of the card down until it is level and firmly seated. Figure 3-2 shows how the SSC looks when installed in slot #2.

Note that the outer ends of the screws in the clamp assembly can act as nuts. They are threaded and can receive screws from the printer or terminal connector, to ensure a good connection with the Apple.

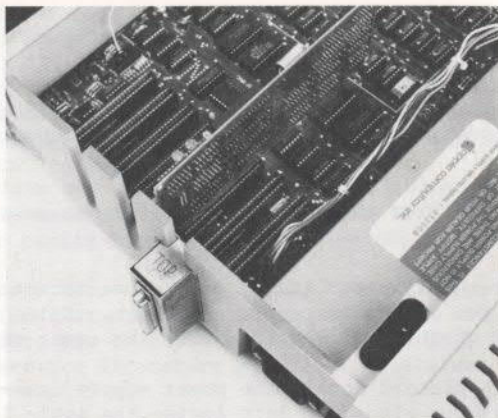


Figure 3-2. SSC in Slot #2 and Clamp Assembly in Notch

Slide the Apple case top plate in place and press down on the rear corners until the corner fasteners pop into place. The Super Serial Card is now installed.

EXTERNAL CABLE AND CONNECTOR

The SSC cable connector you installed in the notch is a standard DB-25 connector with 25 pins. Ten pins of the connector are connected internally to the SSC.

You will need a cable to connect the modem or other device to the SSC connector on the Apple II. Cables with 25-pin connectors on one end are available from your Apple dealer.

The cable must have internal shielding, with the shielding properly terminated at both ends, to prevent electromagnetic interference to nearby radios, television sets, and communication equipment. This shielding is necessary for the system to comply with Class B Federal Communications Commission limits as defined by Subpart J of Part 15 of the FCC rules. Unshielded cables are not recommended.



Make sure that all devices are connected to the same grounded AC power circuit (three-wire wall outlet) as the Apple II. Connecting ungrounded equipment to your Apple II can cause severe electrical damage.

USING SSC IN COMMUNICATIONS MODE

Communications Mode allows you to use the SSC with a modem, connected to a remote device (such as a remote printer, terminal, or other computer). After installing the SSC, you can control its operation

from a BASIC, Pascal or assembly-language program, or even directly from the keyboard. To use the SSC in Communications Mode, do the following:

- Make sure the jumper block points toward MODEM.
- Under BASIC or DOS, boot the Apple II, and then type in PR#s and IN#s to route input and output, respectively, to and from the remote device. (The SSC is in slot s.)
- Under Pascal, boot the Apple II and then use #7: or REMIN: for input, and #8: or REMOUT: for output. (The SSC is in slot #2.)
- If the modem and remote device don't work, refer to Appendix E for troubleshooting hints, or consult your Apple dealer.

COMMUNICATIONS MODE COMMANDS

You can issue any of the commands described in this section by embedding them in a computer program. Under BASIC or DOS, you can also enter them directly at the Apple (or remote terminal) keyboard.

In a BASIC program, put the control character and command in a PRINT statement. In a Pascal program, embed the command in a WRITE or WRITELN statement.

Before keyboard entry of these commands has any effect on the SSC, you must first issue an IN#s command (with the SSC in slot s). When you then enter the command character (usually <CTRL-A>, see below), the prompt APPLE SSC: appears on the display screen. Subsequent characters up to <RETURN> will be interpreted as an SSC command. Pressing the left arrow key before pressing <RETURN> cancels the command and causes the APPLE SSC: prompt to reappear.

Many of these commands override the physical switch settings on the SSC. This makes it unnecessary to open the Apple II case and manually change the SSC switch settings. To change the values back to the physical switch settings, reboot or reset the Apple II, or type in the Reset command described below.

COMMAND FORMATS

All commands are preceded by the Communications Mode command character (usually <CTRL-A>, see below) and followed by <RETURN>. The notation <CTRL-A> means "hold down the CTRL key while pressing A." There are three types of command formats:

- a number <n> followed by an uppercase letter (for example, 4D to set Data Format 4)
- simply an uppercase letter (for example, R to Reset the SSC)
- an uppercase letter followed by a space and then either E to Enable or D to Disable a feature (for example, L D to Disable automatic generation of linefeed characters)

The allowable range of <n> is given in each command description below. The choice of Enable or Disable is written as <E/D>.



The underscore character (<_>) before the <E/D> in Enable/Disable commands is merely a reminder that a space is required there.

The SSC checks only numbers and the first letters of commands and options. All such letters must be uppercase. Further letters, which you can add to assist your memory, have no effect on the SSC. For example, E(cho E(nable is the same as E E. The SSC ignores invalid commands.

THE COMMAND CHARACTER

The normal command character in Communications Mode is <CTRL-A>. You can send the command character itself through the SSC by typing it twice in a row: <CTRL-A><CTRL-A> (no <RETURN> necessary). This special command allows you to transmit the command character without affecting the operation of the SSC, and without having to change to another command character and then back again later.

If you want to change the command character from <CTRL-A> to <CTRL-something else>--for example, <CTRL-W>--type <CTRL-A><CTRL-W>. To change back, type <CTRL-W><CTRL-A>. No <RETURN> is required after either of these commands.



Do not change the control character to <CTRL-S>, <CTRL-T> or <CTRL-R>, since in Communications Mode the SSC interprets these as special control commands from a remote device.

The command character <CTRL-A> is ASCII code 1. Here is how to generate this character in BASIC and Pascal:

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Integer BASIC: | PRINT "<command>" *embedded <CTRL-A> |
| Applesoft BASIC: | PRINT CHR\$(2): "<command>" |
| Pascal: | WRITELN (CHR(2), '<command>'); |

COMMUNICATIONS MODE COMMAND SUMMARY

Table 3-4 is a summary of the commands available in Communications Mode. Some details, explained fully in the remainder of this chapter, have been omitted from the table for the sake of brevity. Commands marked with an asterisk are not supported by Pascal.

| Format | Command Name | Values | Interpretation |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| <n>B | Baud Rate | 0 - 15 | see Table 3-5 |
| <n>C | <CR> Delay | 0 1 2 3 | no delay 32 milliseconds 250 milliseconds (1/4 s) 2 seconds |
| <n>D | Data Format | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 | 8 data bits, 1 stop bit 7 data bits, 1 stop bit 6 data bits, 1 stop bit 5 data bits, 1 stop bit 8 data bits, 2 stop bits 7 data bits, 2 stop bits 6 data bits, 2 stop bits 5 data bits, 2 stop bits |
| <n>F | <FF> Delay | 0 1 2 3 | no delay (default) 32 milliseconds 250 milliseconds (1/4 s) 2 seconds |
| <n>L | <LF> Delay | 0 1 2 3 | no delay (default) 32 milliseconds 250 milliseconds (1/4 s) 2 seconds |
| <n>P | Parity | 0,2,4,6 1 3 5 7 | no parity (default = 0P) odd parity even parity MARK (parity bit always 1) SPACE (parity bit always 0) |
| * <n>S | Screen Slot | 0-7 | chain SSC output to slot n |
| * <n>T | Translate Lowercase (LC) | 0 1 2 3 | change all LC to UC leave LC (possible garbage) LC to UC inverse; leave UC LC to UC; UC to inverse |
| * B | Break | | transmit 233 ms BREAK |
| * R | Reset the SSC | | SW reset + PR#0 and IN#0 |
| * T | Terminal Mode | | (see Terminal Mode section) |
| * Z | Zap <CTRL> | | ignore all <CTRL> commands |
| * E <E/D> | Echo | E or D | echo input on the screen |
| * F <E/D> | Find Keyboard | E or D | accept keyboard entries |
| * L <E/D> | Generate <LF> Out | E or D | send <LF> out after <CR> |
| * M <E/D> | Mask <LF> In | E or D | drop <LF> in after <CR> |
| * X <E/D> | XOFF Recognition | E or D | detect XOFF; await XON |
| * Not supported by Pascal. | | | |

Table 3-4. Summary of Communications Mode Commands

COMMANDS THAT CHANGE SWITCH SETTINGS

The commands discussed in this section either override the SSC switch settings, or affect related behavior of the SSC. The Reset command restores the switch selections.

Baud Rate- $\langle n \rangle$ B

This command overrides the physical settings of switches SW1-1 to SW1-4 on the SSC. For example, to change the rate to 9600 baud, type `<CTRL-A>14B<RETURN>`.

| $\langle n \rangle$ = | SSC Baud Rate | $\langle n \rangle$ = | SSC Baud Rate |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| 0 | use SW1-1 to SW1-4 | 8 | 1200 |
| 1 | 50 | 9 | 1800 |
| 2 | 75 | 10 | 2400 |
| 3 | 109.92 (110) | 11 | 3600 |
| 4 | 134.58 (135) | 12 | 4800 |
| 5 | 150 | 13 | 7200 |
| 6 | 300 | 14 | 9600 |
| 7 | 600 | 15 | 19200 |

Table 3-5. Baud Rate Selections

Data Format- $\langle n \rangle$ D

With this command you can override the settings of switches SW2-1 and SW2-2. The table below shows how many data and stop bits correspond to each value of $\langle n \rangle$. For example, typing `<CTRL-A>3D<RETURN>` causes the SSC to transmit each character in the form: one start bit (always transmitted), five data bits, and one stop bit.

| $\langle n \rangle$ = | Data Bits | Stop Bits |
|-----------------------|-----------|--|
| 0 | 8 | 1 |
| 1 | 7 | 1 |
| 2 | 6 | 1 |
| 3 | 5 | 1 |
| 4 | 8 | 2 (1 with $\langle n \rangle$ P options 4 through 7) |
| 5 | 7 | 2 |
| 6 | 6 | 2 |
| 7 | 5 | 2 (1-1/2 with $\langle n \rangle$ P options 0 through 3) |

Table 3-6. Data Format Selections

Parity- $\langle n \rangle$ P

You can use this command to determine the kind of parity the SSC is to generate when sending data and check for when receiving data. There are five parity options available:

| <n>= | Parity to Use |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| Ø, 2, 4 or 6 | none |
| 1 | odd parity (odd number of 1's) |
| 3 | even parity (even number of 1's) |
| 5 | MARK parity (parity bit always 1) |
| 7 | SPACE parity (parity bit always Ø) |

Table 3-7. Parity Selections

For example, type <CTRL-A>1P<RETURN> to cause the SSC to transmit and check for odd parity. Odd parity means that the high bit of every character is Ø if there is already an odd number of 1 bits in that character, or 1 if there is otherwise an even number of 1 bits, making the total always odd. This is an easy (but not foolproof) way to check data for transmission errors. (See Appendix F.)

Generate <LF> Out-L_<E/D>

You can use this command to have the SSC automatically generate and transmit a linefeed (<LF>) character after each carriage return (<CR>) character. This overrides the setting of switch SW2-5. For example, you can type <CTRL-A>L E<RETURN> to cause your printer to produce double-spaced listings or manuscripts for editing.

Mask (Suppress) <LF> In-M_<E/D>

If you type <CTRL-A>M D<RETURN>, the SSC will not remove incoming linefeed (<LF>) characters that immediately follow carriage return (<CR>) characters.

Reset the SSC-R

Typing <CTRL-A>R<RETURN> has the same effect as sending a PR#Ø and an IN#Ø to a BASIC program and then resetting the SSC. This keyboard command cancels all previous commands to the SSC and puts the physical switch settings back into force.

OTHER COMMANDS

The commands described in this subsection control the handling of characters and of the video screen. Three commands control timed delays following transmission of <CR>, <LF> and <FF> characters. The Translate command controls the display of lowercase and uppercase characters. The Z and F commands suppress control characters and characters entered at the keyboard, respectively. The X command causes the SSC to check the character stream for XOFF, as part of the XON/XOFF protocol. Finally, the <n>S command routes video output to a selected slot, and the E command suppresses display (echo) of characters on the screen.

Set Time Delays-<n>C, <n>L, <n>F

Some printers are slow and do not provide a "printer busy" or handshake signal to the Apple II. If such a printer is connected to the SSC via a modem, you may want to use these three delay commands.

The <n>C command causes the Apple II to delay a specified amount of time, after sending a carriage return character, before sending another group (usually another line) to it. This gives the print head enough time to return to the left side of the page so it is ready to continue printing.

The <n>L command allows time after a linefeed character for a printer platen to turn so the paper is vertically positioned to receive the next line.

The <n>F command allows time after a form feed character for the printer platen to move the paper form to the top of the next page (typically a longer time than a Linefeed).

| <n>= | Time Delay |
|------|-------------------------------|
| 0 | none |
| 1 | 32 milliseconds |
| 2 | 250 milliseconds (1/4 second) |
| 3 | 2 seconds |

Table 3-8. Time Delay Selections

Consult the user manual for the printer to find out how much time it takes to move its print head and platen, and so to determine an appropriate set of values for these three delays if a printer is used as the remote device. The idea is to have at least enough time for the printer parts to move the required distance, but not so much time that overall printing speed is slowed down drastically.

Translate Lowercase Characters-<n>T

The Apple II monitor "translates" all incoming lowercase characters into uppercase ones before sending them to the video screen or to a BASIC program. With the <n>T command, four options are available:

- Ø Change all lowercase characters to uppercase before passing them to a BASIC program or to the video screen. This is what the Apple II monitor does to lowercase.
- 1 Pass along all lowercase characters unchanged. The appearance of the lowercase characters on the Apple II screen is undefined (garbage).
- 2 Display lowercase characters as uppercase inverse characters (that is, as black characters on a white background).
- 3 Pass lowercase characters to programs unchanged, but display lowercase as uppercase, and uppercase as inverse uppercase (that is, as black characters on a white background).

Table 3-9. Lowercase Character Displays

Zap (Suppress) Control Characters-Z

Typing <CTRL-A>Z<RETURN> prevents the SSC from recognizing any further control characters (and hence commands) in the stream of characters moving through the SSC.

If you issue the Z command, all further commands are ignored; this is useful if the data you are transmitting contains bit patterns that the SSC can mistake for control characters.



The only way to reinstate command recognition after invoking the Z command is to reset the SSC, or clear the high-order bit at location \$5F8+s (with the SSC in slot s).

Find Keyboard-F_<E/D>

You can protect incoming data from disruption by keystrokes with this command. For example, you can include <CTRL-A>F D in a program, followed by a routine that retrieves data coming in through the SSC, followed by <CTRL-A>F E later in the program.

XOFF Recognition-X_<E/D>

In Communications Mode, the SSC automatically recognizes any XOFF (decimal 19; Appendix D) character coming from a device attached to it, and responds to it by halting transmission of characters. The SSC resumes transmission as soon as it receives an XON character (decimal 17; Appendix D) from the device. To disable XOFF recognition, use <CTRL-A>X D<RETURN>.

Specify Screen Slot-<n>S

With this command you can specify the slot number of the device where you want text or listings displayed. (Normally this is slot #0, the Apple II video screen.) This allows "chaining" of the SSC to another card slot, such as an 80-column-display peripheral card. For the firmware in the SSC to pass on information to the firmware in the other card, the other card must have an output entry point within its Cs00 space; this is the case for all currently available 80-column-display cards for the Apple II.

For example, let's say you have the SSC in slot #2 with a remote terminal connected to it, and an 80-column-display card in slot #3. Type <CTRL-A>3S<RETURN> to cause the data from the remote terminal to be chained through the card in slot #3, so that it is displayed on the Apple II in 80-column format. (Not available in Pascal.)

Echo Characters on the Screen-E_<E/D>

For the Apple II, as for most computers, displaying (echoing) a character on the video screen is a separate step from receiving it from the keyboard, though we tend to think of these as one step, as on a typewriter. For example, if you type in <CTRL-A>E D<RETURN>, the SSC does not forward incoming characters to the Apple II screen. This can be used to hide someone's password entered at a terminal, or to avoid double-display of characters.

TERMINAL MODE

Under Communication Mode, the SSC can enter Terminal Mode and make the Apple II act like an unintelligent terminal. This is useful for connecting the Apple II to a computer timesharing service, or for conversing with another Apple II.

Terminal Mode makes it possible to generate lowercase characters, plus the ten ASCII characters not provided on the Apple II keyboard (plus ESC, since <ESC> is used for this feature).

To generate lowercase characters, press <ESC> (the "ESCAPE" key near the upper left corner of the Apple II keyboard) once, and then type alphabetic characters as you would normally do. After that, to capitalize a single letter, press <ESC> again before typing the letter. To lock the keyboard in uppercase, press <ESC> twice in succession. To get back to lowercase, press <ESC> once, as before.

To generate one of the special ASCII characters listed in Table 3-10, first press <ESC> once (if necessary) to place the keyboard in lowercase mode. Then press <ESC> a second time, followed by one of the top-row keys as shown in Table 3-10. For example, to send a tilde, make sure the keyboard is in lowercase mode, then type <ESC> followed by 9.

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|
| <ESC> followed by: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 0 | : |
| generates: | FS | US | [| \ | _ | { | | } | ~ | ESC | RUB |
| or in hexadecimal: | 9C | 9F | DB | DC | DF | FB | FC | FD | FE | 9B | FF |

Table 3-10. Special ASCII Character Generation

TERMINAL MODE COMMANDS

The commands that specifically affect Terminal Mode are listed in Table 3-11. The Translate, Echo and XOFF commands are described earlier in this chapter.

| Format | Command Name | Interpretation |
|--|-----------------------------------|--|
| T | Enter Terminal Mode | Go into Terminal Mode. |
| B | Transmit a Break Signal | Send a 233-millisecond BREAK (signoff) signal. |
| * E <E/D> | Echo Enable/Disable | Default E D (full-duplex); use E E for half-duplex. |
| S <E/D> | Special Characters Enable/Disable | Default S E; allows/defeats generation of lowercase and special characters (Table 3-10). |
| * <n>T | Translate Lowercase Characters | Determine treatment of incoming lowercase characters. |
| * X <E/D> | XOFF Recognition Enable/Disable | Default X E; in Terminal Mode, X E makes SSC detect <CTRL-R> and <CTRL-T> (remote-control OFF & ON, respectively), but not <CTRL-S>. |
| Q | Quit (Exit from) Terminal Mode | Return to normal Communications Mode operation. |
| * Fully described earlier in this chapter. | | |

Table 3-11. Terminal Mode Commands

Enter Terminal Mode-T

This causes the Apple II to function as a full-duplex unintelligent terminal. You can use this command in conjunction with the ECHO command to simulate the half-duplex terminal mode of the old Apple II Communications Card. Type <CTRL-A>T<RETURN> to enter this mode.



If you enter Terminal Mode and don't see what you type echoed on the Apple video screen, probably the modem link has not yet been established, or you need to use the E(cho E(nable command.

Transmit a Break Signal-B

Typing <CTRL-A>B<RETURN> causes the SSC to transmit a 233-millisecond break signal, recognized by most time-sharing systems as a signoff.

Special Characters-S_<E/D>

Typing <CTRL-A>S E<RETURN> causes the SSC to interpret <ESC><n> pairs as special characters, allowing a keyboard in this way to generate all possible ASCII characters. If you type <CTRL-A>S D<RETURN>, the SSC will treat the <ESC> key like any other key.

Quit (Exit from) Terminal Mode-Q

Type <CTRL-A>Q<RETURN> to exit from terminal mode.

A TERMINAL MODE EXAMPLE

You can use the sample program below to change the SSC temporarily from the characteristics you ordinarily use, to the characteristics needed to make the Apple II into a dumb terminal connected to the Dow Jones News & Quotes Reporter. This program assumes that the SSC is set for Communications Mode and that the jumper block is pointing toward MODEM. Neither of these conditions can be changed by software. This program also assumes that the SSC is in slot #1 and that you want to chain I/O to an 80-column card in slot #3; these conditions you can change via software. To change this Integer BASIC program to an Applesoft program, substitute CHR\$(5) for D\$ and CHR\$(2) for A\$, and leave out program lines 40 and 42.

```
10 REM *****
20 REM *      THIS PROGRAM SETS UP THE SSC FOR DOW JONES      *
30 REM *****
40 D$="": REM TYPE <CTRL-D> ESCAPE CHARACTER BETWEEN QUOTES
42 A$="": REM TYPE <CTRL-A> COMMAND CHARACTER BETWEEN QUOTES
50 PRINT D$;"PR#1": REM SSC IS IN SLOT #1;
52 PRINT A$;"6 BAUD": REM SET BAUD RATE TO 300;
54 PRINT A$;"1 DATA": REM DATA FORMAT OF 7 DATA, 1 STOP
56 PRINT A$;"0 PARITY": REM AND NO PARITY;
58 PRINT A$;"LF DISABLE": REM NO <LF> GENERATION AFTER <CR>.
60 PRINT A$;"3 SLOTCN": REM CHAIN TO CARD IN SLOT #3
62 PRINT A$;"TERM MODE": REM AND ENTER TERMINAL MODE.
70 REM *****
72 REM * NOW YOU SHOULD BE IN TERMINAL MODE, GETTING THE *
74 REM * INFO YOU NEED FROM THE DOW JONES SERVICE. WHEN *
76 REM * FINISHED, EXIT WITH THE <CTRL-A>Q(UIT COMMAND. *
78 REM *****
100 REM Q(UIT COMMAND SENDS CONTROL BACK TO THIS PROGRAM:
110 PRINT A$;"RESET": REM RESET SWITCH-SELECTED OPTIONS
120 END
```


CHAPTER 4

HOW THE SCC WORKS

This chapter is divided into three major sections. The first explains what the SCC does, using everyday terms wherever possible. Those of you already familiar with serial data communication can skip this section.

The second section is for anyone who wants an overview of the SCC's operating modes and configuration possibilities.

The third section is a dyed-in-the-wool hardware theory of operation for both the expert and the adventuresome layperson.

SERIAL DATA COMMUNICATION

The SCC is a device that performs serial data communication. Let's consider communication first, then data, and then serial data and data transfer.

Communication is easy enough: getting information from here to there or from there to here. In this discussion, the Apple II is "here." "There" can be nearby (local) or far enough away (remote) that some intermediate device, like a telephone, is needed. Information moving from here to there (out of the Apple) is called output; information moving from there to here (into the Apple) is called input.

Data denotes information in its many forms. For successful data communication, it is essential that both the sender and receiver agree on their interpretation of the data transferred.

Inside the Apple II, data can be numbers and letters and symbols, or program instructions for the computer to carry out, or pointers to storage locations, or error message numbers, or codes for generating pictures or sounds (or lots of other things).

In the Apple II, as in all other computers, data is represented in codes made up of ones and zeros, the only two digits allowed in the binary (two-element) system. Each one or zero is called a BInary digiT or bit. In the binary system, as in our ordinary decimal

system, you can count to as high a number as you want--it just takes more digits to get there than in the decimal system--and use each number as a code to represent that number of different items. Table 4-1 gives some examples of how many items you can represent with various quantities of digits.

| System | Digits | Using | You can represent |
|---------|---------|-------|-------------------------------|
| decimal | 0 - 9 | 1 | ten items (0 through 9) |
| | | 2 | one hundred (0 through 99) |
| | | 3 | one thousand (0 through 999) |
| binary | 0 and 1 | 1 | two items (0 or 1) |
| | | 2 | four (0, 1, 10 or 11) |
| | | 3 | eight (0 through 111) |
| | | 4 | sixteen (0 through 1111) |
| | | 5 | thirty-two (0 through 11111) |
| | | 6 | sixty-four (0 through 111111) |
| | | 7 | one hundred twenty-eight |
| | | 8 | two hundred fifty-six, etc. |

Table 4-1. Binary and Decimal Digits and Quantities

For printers, plotters, terminals, and many other devices, 128 codes are enough to distinguish all the necessary characters: 52 for the upper and lowercase alphabet, 10 for the decimal digits, and dozens of others for punctuation marks and special symbols. As a result, the 128-character American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) is widely used. (This 7-bit code is listed in Appendix D.)

Throughout the world, post, telegraph, telex and wire services use 5-bit and 6-bit code sets, even though so few bits cannot represent a very large selection of items. Meanwhile, computers have a penchant for sending each other streams of 8-bit codes with obscure meanings. As long as sender and receiver agree on interpretation, any set of codes will do. The SSC can send all of them.

PARALLEL DATA IN THE APPLE II

The Apple II is called an eight-bit processor because the basic unit of data it uses and moves around internally is an eight-bit byte. The Apple II has sets of eight lines interconnecting its various internal parts, so it can move around all eight bits at the same time. Since the bits travel together like eight cars side by side on an eight-lane highway, data in the Apple II is called parallel data, and data movements within the Apple II are called parallel data transfers (Figure 4-1).

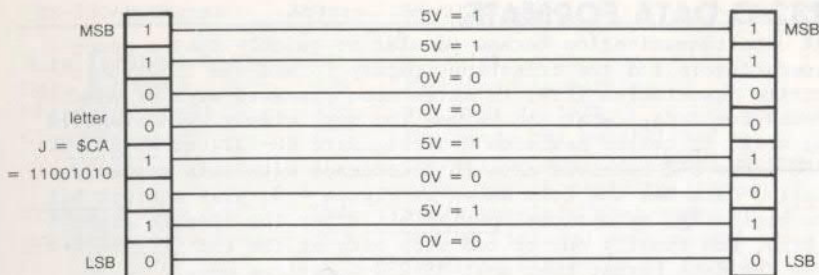


Figure 4-1. Parallel Data Transfer

SERIAL DATA FOR LONG DISTANCES

Just as it would be extremely costly to build highways with eight lanes in each direction over great distances, so it is costly to connect two widely separated pieces of equipment using eight lines in each direction. So, many manufacturers produce computers, printers, plotters, terminals and so forth that send and receive information along one line in each direction, one bit after another. Such a setup, with bits moving from one place to another like a string of cars in a single lane, is called a serial data transfer (Figure 4-2).

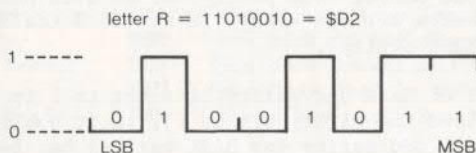


Figure 4-2. Serial Data Transfer

DATA CONVERSION

Changing parallel data to serial data or vice versa is called data conversion (Figure 4-3). By convention (see the later subsection describing RS-232-C), whenever parallel data is converted to serial data, the right-hand bit is sent first. It is as though there were a traffic law that when a multi-lane highway narrows to a single lane, the car in the right lane goes first, then the car from the next lane to the left, etc.

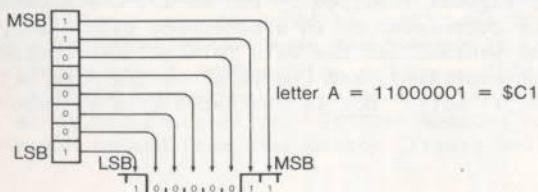


Figure 4-3. Parallel-to-Serial Data Conversion

RS-232-C DATA FORMATS

Serial data communication became popular so quickly that a group of manufacturers and the telephone company formed the Electronic Industries Association (EIA) to agree upon standard ways of sending and receiving data. What has become the most widely used standard in the world is called Revision C of standard RS-232, or RS-232-C. The SSC sends and receives data in accordance with this standard. The serial data has the form shown in Figure 4-3, plus a start bit at the beginning, an optional parity bit after the five to eight data bits, and finally one or two stop bits at the end (Figure 4-4). This is the data format that most RS-232-C devices use.

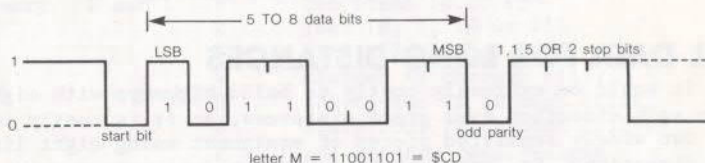


Figure 4-4. RS-232-C Serial Data Format

What is this mysterious parity bit all about? It is an optional extra bit set to 0 or 1 to make the total number of data and stop bits set to 1 an odd number (odd parity) or an even number (even parity); or this extra bit can always be set to 0 (called SPACE parity) or to 1 (MARK parity).

The combined total of data and parity bits set to 1 in Figure 4-4 is 5, an odd number (and the parity bit is 1), so it qualifies as a correct character if odd parity (or MARK parity) has been agreed upon by sender and receiver. However, if that same character were received under even parity (or SPACE parity), the receiving device would signal that a transmission error had occurred. If one bit in a character changes during transmission, parity checking will detect the error. If two bits change, the error will go undetected.

RS-232-C SIGNALS

Since the RS-232-C standard stems from the early days of telephone and telegraph, the names given to its signals may sound quaint to our "modern" ears. However, the signals correspond to familiar conditions that we take for granted when using a telephone. Table 4-2 lists the basic signals required by the RS-232-C standard, and what conditions they correspond to in a telephone call that you originate. Think of yourself as the Data Terminal (a terminus or end point of the conversation), and the phone as the Data Set (the communication device). Note: not is indicated by a bar above a signal name.

| RS-232-C Signal | Abbrev. | Similar to |
|-----------------------|------------|---|
| Data Terminal Ready | DTR | you pick up the phone |
| Data Set Ready | DSR | the phone is working |
| Request To Send | RTS | you want to talk |
| Clear To Send | CTS | the phone has established a connection and the person at the other end is ready to listen |
| Transmit Data | <u>TxD</u> | you speak into the phone |
| not Request To Send | RTS | you've finished talking and are ready to listen or to hang up |
| not Clear To Send | CTS | the phone has sent your words and is ready for your next request to send a message |
| not Data Terminal Rdy | DTR | you hang up |

Table 4-2. RS-232-C Signals As Interpreted by the Sender

Here are the RS-232-C signals and how you would interpret them if you were to answer a telephone call (Table 4-3).

| RS-232-C Signal | Abbrev. | Similar to |
|---------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Ring Indicator | RI | the phone rings (optional) |
| Data Set Ready | DSR | you pick up the phone; it works |
| Data Carrier Detect | DCD | you hear background noise |
| Receive Data | <u>RxD</u> | you hear what is said |
| not Data Set Ready | DSR | the other party has hung up |

Table 4-3. RS-232-C Signals As Interpreted by the Receiver

Modems

All of the above signals refer to the interaction between what RS-232-C calls Data Terminal Equipment (DTE--end points of data transfers, such as the Apple II or a printer) and what it calls Data Communication Equipment (DCE--transmitting or receiving devices, such as modems).

What is a modem? The name is short for MOdulator/DEModulator. As a modulator it takes electrical signals from a computer or printer (or other device) that it is connected to, and turns them into musical tones over a telephone line. As a demodulator it takes the musical tones it detects on a telephone line and turns them back into electrical signals for use by the printer or computer (or other device) that it is connected to. It also handles the RS-232-C control signals to and from that device (Figure 4-5).

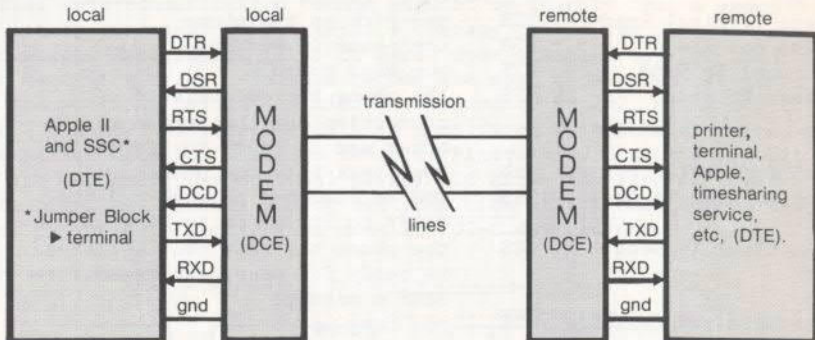


Figure 4-5. An RS-232-C Setup with Modems

By convention, the calling (originate) modem produces a fairly high tone (let's say LA) as the background or carrier signal that it sends; it then modulates (changes) that tone to S0 to mean 0 and TI to mean 1. Meanwhile, the called (answer) modem plays a lower tone, MI, as a carrier signal, and modulates that tone to RE to indicate 0 or FA to indicate 1. In this way, both modems can send and receive information along the same wires without interpreting what they send as received messages and vice versa. (All their voices sound alike.)

Modem Eliminators

RS-232 signals are designed for the interactions of two DTE's, two DCE's, and telephone lines, as shown in Figure 4-5. What if you just want to connect two DTE's together in the same room, directly (for example, an Apple II and a printer)? You can use what is called a null modem or modem eliminator. The jumper block on the SSC does just that when it is connected with its triangle pointing toward the word TERMINAL.

By using different tones to send and receive information, modems can make sure that what comes from the "mouthpiece" (transmit register) of one DTE gets routed to the "earpiece" (receive register) of the other. A null modem simply crosses those two wires (Figure 4-6).

To simulate the other signal exchanges that modems would perform, the null modem interconnects the signal wires as shown in Figure 4-6. Thus RTS gets turned back to the sender as CTS as though the phone had instantly established a connection; RTS is also connected to DCD on the other side to pretend that a carrier signal has been detected. Finally, connecting DTR (willing to transfer data) from one side to both RI and DSR (a call arriving) on the other side completes the simulated telephone connection. (RI is optional.) The jumper block does it all!

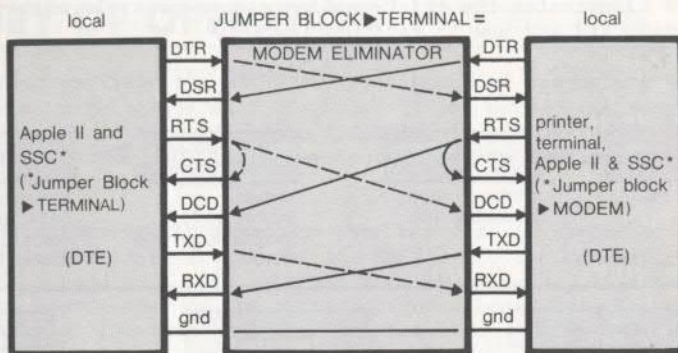


Figure 4-6. An RS-232-C Setup with a Modem Eliminator

SSC MODES AND CONFIGURATIONS

Figure 4-7 outlines the possible operating modes of the Super Serial Card and their relationships to each other.

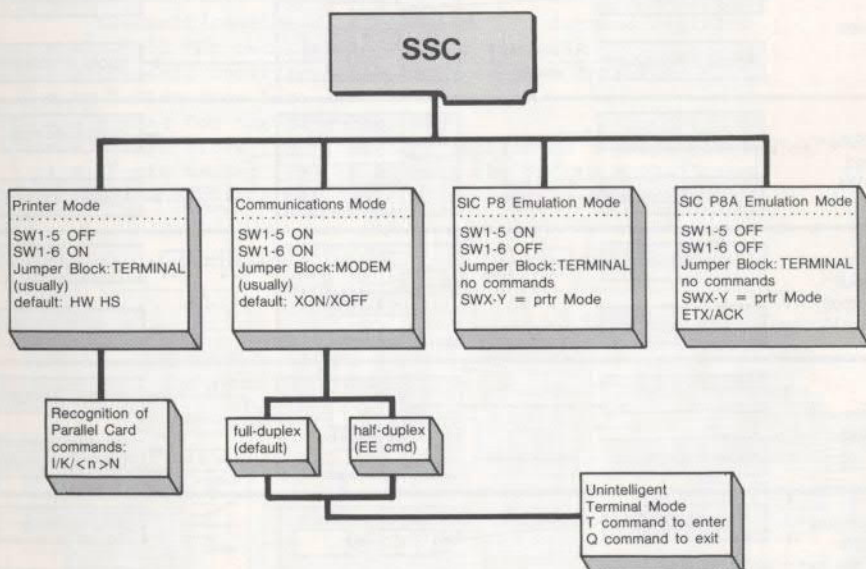


Figure 4-7. SSC Operating Modes

Figure 4-8 illustrates the chief configurations possible with the Super Serial Card and how to set them up.

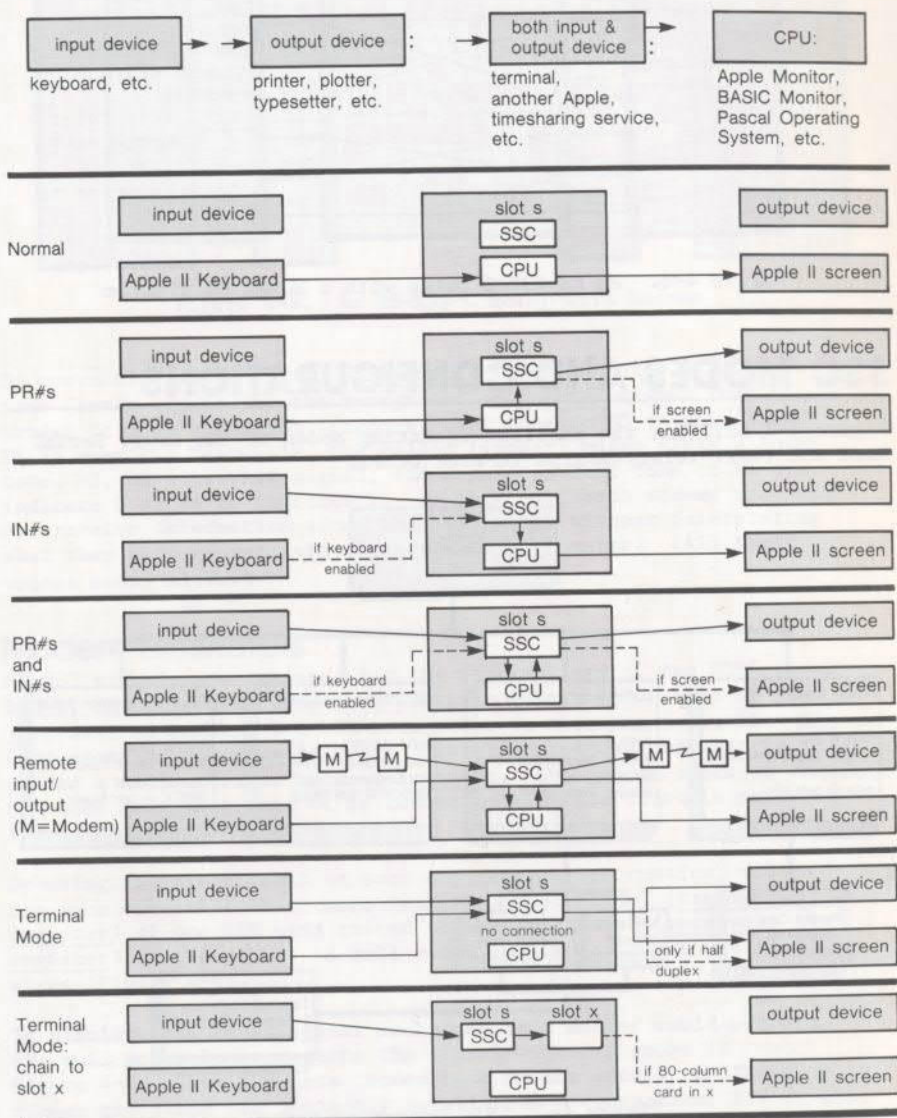


Figure 4-8. SSC Configurations

THEORY OF OPERATION

This section explains the SSC's overall theory of operation, but not the internal workings of each IC chip. If you would like such information, it is best to obtain specifications from the IC manufacturers. The most complex component is the ACIA, which is a Synertek 6551 or equivalent.

While reading through this section, you may find it useful to refer to Figure 4-9, a block diagram of the SSC, or to the schematic diagram in Appendix C. All references in the form 1A, 3C, etc., pertain to coordinates on the printed circuit board itself. Here is an inventory of the main components of the SSC:

- 50-pin connection to the Apple II peripheral connector slot
- a 12-line address bus
- addressing and control logic (1B, 1C, 2C, 3C)
- a 2K-by-8-bit ROM (4B-5C)
- jumpers and bow ties for optional substitution of RAM (3-4A)
- two blocks of 7 switches each (1A, 2A)
- two registers for reading the switch settings (2B, 3B)
- an Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter (ACIA; 4-5A) with its internal registers:
 - status/reset register
 - transmit/receive data register
 - control register
 - command register
- a 1.8432 MHz oscillator (3A) for the ACIA
- a transmit interface (6A) and a receive interface (7A)
- an 8-line data bus
- a buffer for the data bus (6C)
- a jumper block (6B) that can function as a modem eliminator
- a 10-pin header (7B) to connect the SSC to a DB-25 jack via a short internal cable (discussed in Appendix C)

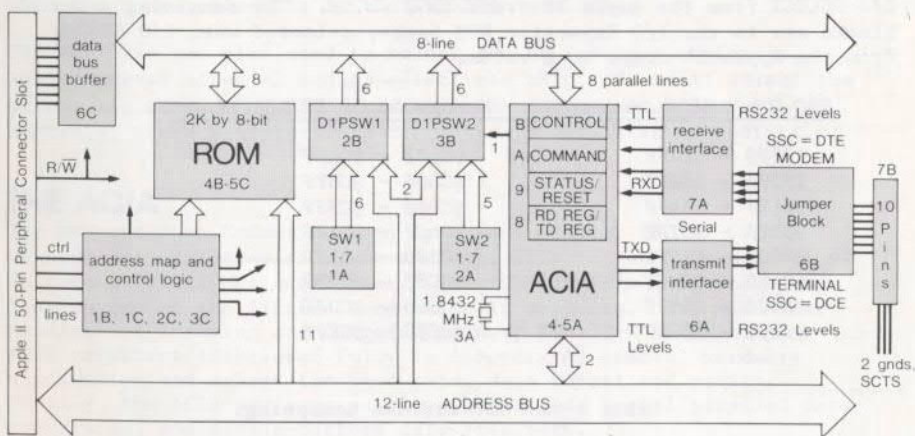


Figure 4-9. Overall Block Diagram of the SSC

ADDRESSING AND CONTROL LOGIC

The twelve address lines (A0 - A11) from the Apple II provide all the necessary \$C000 addressing on the SSC. Control logic at 1B, 1C, 2C and 3C, plus the signals RESET, DEVICE SELECT, I/O SELECT, and I/O STROBE, ensure the routing of signals to the appropriate addresses.

The SSC follows the Apple II protocol in its use of the \$C800 address space. An LS279 (1B) serves as a NAND gate, a pair of inverters, and a set-reset latch. The latch is set by an access to the \$Csxx space, and is reset by access to the \$CFxx space or by a reset. When this set-reset latch is set, the Apple II can access the \$C800 space on the SSC. A small RC filter prevents the latch from being reset by spurious noise.

ROM/RAM Space

The 2K ROM (4B-5C) containing the SSC driver firmware resides in the \$C800 - \$CFFF address space. However, an LS00 (2C) and an LS32 (3C) remap the addresses from the range \$Cs00 - \$CsFF to the range \$CF00 - \$CFFF, since the \$CFxx addresses are unusable. (Access to them disables use of the \$C800 address space.) As a result of this remapping, only one ROM is required, and none of the ROM space is wasted.

The SSC can use a 2K-by-8-bit RAM in place of the ROM. Between columns 3 and 4 and rows A and B on the SSC, there are three jumper pads and three bow ties. If you solder the jumper pads and cut the bow ties, pins 18, 20 and 21 will be, respectively, chip enable, output enable and read-write control (instead of ROM enables).

The ROM (or RAM) addresses are mapped as follows (Table 4-4). The first 256-byte block is the Peripheral Card ROM Space, selected when I/O SELECT from the Apple II drops to 0 volts. The remaining seven blocks are in the I/O Expansion ROM Space, selected when I/O STROBE from the Apple II drops to 0 volts.

| SSC ROM/RAM Addresses | Become Apple II Addresses |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| \$0700 - \$07FF | \$Cs00 - \$CsFF |
| \$0800 - \$08FF | \$C800 - \$C8FF |
| \$0100 - \$01FF | \$C900 - \$C9FF |
| \$0200 - \$02FF | \$CA00 - \$CAFF |
| \$0300 - \$03FF | \$CB00 - \$CBFF |
| \$0400 - \$04FF | \$CC00 - \$CCFF |
| \$0500 - \$05FF | \$CD00 - \$CDFF |
| \$0600 - \$06FF | \$CE00 - \$CEFF |

Table 4-4. SSC Address Remapping

Registers in Peripheral I/O Space

Whenever DEVICE SELECT drops to 0 volts, the Apple II is addressing the SSC's Peripheral I/O Space (the sixteen bytes starting at \$C080 + s0). This signal is combined logically with address lines A0 through A3 to select one of the six registers that reside in that space (Table 4-5).

| Chip selected | Address(+s0) | Purpose of register |
|---------------|--------------|---|
| LS365 (2B) | \$C081 | store state of SW1 (1A) (read) |
| LS365 (3B) | \$C082 | store state of SW2 (2A) and state of CTS (read) |
| ACIA (4-5A) | \$C088 | receive (read), transmit (write) |
| ACIA (4-5A) | \$C089 | status (read), reset (write) |
| ACIA (4-5A) | \$C08A | command (read and write) |
| ACIA (4-5A) | \$C08B | control (read and write) |

Table 4-5. Registers in SSC Peripheral I/O Space

The two LS365 chips act as buffers so that the state of eleven of the fourteen available switches, plus the state of RS-232-C signal Clear To Send (CTS), can be read. There are 3.3K ohm pullup resistors at the switch inputs of the LS365 chips. A closed switch pulls down an input, and it is read as zero.

Three switches are not connected to the LS365s. Switch SW2-6, when ON, passes interrupt requests from the ACIA to the Apple II. (The Apple II, however, currently does not support interrupts.) Setting switches SW1-7 ON and SW2-7 OFF connects DB-25 pin 8 (DCD) to the DCD input of the ACIA. Setting SW1-7 OFF and SW2-7 ON splices pin 19, Secondary Clear To Send (SCTS), onto the DCD input of the ACIA when the jumper block is in the TERMINAL position.

The ACIA has two pins used to select one of its four registers. While address lines A2 and A3 select the chip, A0 and A1 select the actual register. The SSC firmware reads and writes ACIA register contents; these registers are discussed in detail in Appendix A.

THE ACIA

The Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter (ACIA) is the central and most complex element of the SSC. It and the crystal at 3A form a 1.8432 MHz oscillator. The ACIA divides this frequency down to one of the fifteen baud rates it supports. The ACIA also handles all incoming and outgoing primary RS-232-C signals. The ACIA registers (discussed fully in Appendix A) control hardware handshaking and select the baud rate, data format and parity. Finally, the ACIA performs parallel/serial and serial/parallel data conversion, and single-buffers data transfers.

DATA INPUT AND OUTPUT

The MC1489 at 7A converts the incoming serial data from RS-232-C to TTL voltage levels. The MC1488 at 6A converts the outgoing serial data from TTL to RS-232-C voltage levels, and in conjunction with three capacitors limits the output slew rate. Three of the received handshake lines (Clear To Send, Data Carrier Detect, and Data Set Ready) have 15K ohm pullup resistors so the SSC will work with devices that do not assert those signals.

DATA BUS

The 8-bit data bus on the SSC is, of course, a parallel bus. The ACIA takes output from it and gives input to it in parallel form. Also connected to the bus are the two switch detection registers (2B and 3B) and the ROM or RAM chip.

An LS245 (6C) buffers the output to the data bus, and minimizes input loading. The data bus has a 3.3K ohm pullup resistor on each line so the data inputs on the LS245 are not floating when it turns on in output mode.

JUMPER BLOCK

The jumper block has two positions: when its arrow points toward MODEM, the SSC looks like Data Terminal Equipment (DTE); that is, the SSC is prepared to talk to Data Communication Equipment (DCE), such as a modem. When installed with its arrow pointing toward TERMINAL, the jumper block acts as a modem eliminator (null modem); that is, the SSC looks like the DCE on the other device's side of a serial communication connection. In this position, the SSC can talk directly to a printer or any other DTE. Figure 4-6 shows the signal swapping that the jumper block in the TERMINAL position performs.

APPENDIX A

FIRMWARE

This appendix contains the following information:

- an explanation of the Pascal 1.1 firmware card protocol
- a firmware memory map
- a description of the SSC's use of its peripheral slot scratchpad RAM addresses
- a description of the ACIA registers and switch detection registers in the SSC's peripheral I/O space
- a list of firmware entry points and 6502 register values
- the actual SSC firmware listings

PASCAL 1.1 FIRMWARE PROTOCOL

The old Apple II Serial Interface Card (SIC) ran under Pascal 1.0 with three direct firmware entry points, one for each of the three I/O functions it supported:

| Address | Contains |
|---------|------------------------------------|
| \$C800 | initialization routine entry point |
| \$C84D | read routine entry point |
| \$C9AA | write routine entry point |

New peripheral cards can be "accepted" into the Pascal 1.0 system by appearing to be a SIC; that is, with these same three entry points and with \$38 at \$Cs05 and \$18 at \$Cs07 (see Device ID section below).

Pascal 1.1, on the other hand, has a more flexible setup, and also supports more I/O functions. It can make indirect calls to the firmware in a (new) peripheral card through addresses in a branch table in the card's firmware. It also has facilities for uniquely identifying new peripheral I/O devices.

I/O ROUTINE ENTRY POINTS

The I/O routine entry point branch table is located near the beginning of the \$Cs00 address space (s being the slot number where the peripheral card is installed). This space was chosen instead of the \$C800 space, since under BASIC protocol the \$Cs00 space is required, while the \$C800 space is optional.

The branch table locations that Pascal 1.1 uses are:

| Address | Contains |
|---------|--|
| \$Cs0D | initialization routine offset (required) |
| \$Cs0E | read routine offset (required) |
| #Cs0F | write routine offset (required) |
| \$Csl0 | status routine offset (required) |
| \$Csl1 | \$00 if optional offsets follow; non-zero if not |
| \$Csl2 | control routine offset (optional) |
| \$Csl3 | interrupt handling routine offset (optional) |

Notice that \$Csl1 contains \$00 only if the control and interrupt handling routines are supported by the firmware. (For example, the SSC does not support these two routines, and so location \$Csl1 contains a (non-zero) firmware instruction.) Apple II Pascal 1.0 and 1.1 do not support control and interrupt requests, but such requests may be implemented in future versions of the Pascal BIOS and other future Apple II operating systems.

Here are the entry point addresses, and the contents of the 6502 registers on entry to and on exit from Pascal 1.1 I/O routines:

| Addr. | Offset for | X Register | Y Register | A Register |
|--|----------------|------------|-------------|------------------|
| \$Cs0D | Initialization | | | |
| | On entry | \$Cs | \$s0 | |
| | On exit | error code | (unchanged) | (unchanged) |
| \$Cs0E | Read | | | |
| | On entry | \$Cs | \$s0 | |
| | On exit | error code | (unchanged) | character read |
| \$Cs0F | Write | | | |
| | On entry | \$Cs | \$s0 | char. to write |
| | On exit | error code | (unchanged) | (unchanged) |
| \$Csl0 | Status | | | |
| | On entry | \$Cs | \$s0 | request (0 or 1) |
| | On exit | error code | (changed) | (unchanged) |
| Notes: Request code 0 means, "Are you ready to accept output?" | | | | |
| Request code 1 means, "Do you have input ready?" | | | | |
| On exit, the reply to the status request is in the carry bit: carry clear means "No"; carry set means "Yes." | | | | |

Table A-1. I/O Routine Offsets and Registers under Pascal 1.1

DEVICE IDENTIFICATION

Pascal 1.1 uses four firmware bytes to identify the peripheral card. Both the identifying bytes and the branch table are near the beginning of the \$Cs00 ROM space. The identifiers are listed in Table A-2.

| Address | Value |
|---------|--|
| \$Cs05 | \$38 (like the old Serial Interface Card) |
| \$Cs07 | \$18 (like the old Serial Interface Card) |
| \$Cs0B | \$01 (the Generic Signature of new FW cards) |
| \$Cs0C | \$ci (the Device Signature; see below) |

Table A-2. Bytes Used for Device Identification

The first digit, c, of the Device Signature byte identifies the device class as listed in Table A-3.

| Digit | Class |
|-------|-------------------------------------|
| \$0 | reserved |
| \$1 | printer |
| \$2 | joystick or other X-Y input device |
| \$3 | serial or parallel I/O card |
| \$4 | modem |
| \$5 | sound or speech device |
| \$6 | clock |
| \$7 | mass storage device |
| \$8 | 80-column card |
| \$9 | network or bus interface |
| \$A | special purpose (none of the above) |
| \$B-F | reserved for future expansion |

Table A-3. Device Class Digit

The second digit, i, of the Device Signature byte is a unique identifier for the card, assigned by Apple Technical Support. For example, the SSC has a Device Signature of \$31: the 3 signifies that it is a serial or parallel I/O card, and the 1 is the low-order digit supplied by Apple Technical Support.

Although version 1.1 of Pascal ignores the Device Signature, applications programs can use them to identify specific devices.

SSC FIRMWARE MEMORY USAGE

Table A-4 is an overall map of the locations that the SSC uses, both in the Apple II and in the SSC's own firmware address space.

| Addresses | Name of area | Contents |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| \$0000-\$00FF | Page Zero | Monitor pointers, I/O hooks, and temporary storage (Table A-5) |
| \$04xx-\$07xx (selected locations) | Peripheral Slot Scratchpad RAM | Locations (8 per slot) in Apple's pages \$04 through \$07. SSC uses all eight of them (Table A-6) |
| \$C0(8+s)0 - \$C0(8+s)F | Peripheral Card I/O Space | Locations (16 per slot) for general I/O; SSC uses 6 bytes (Table A-7) |
| \$Cs00-\$CsFF | Peripheral Card ROM Space | One 256-byte page reserved for card in slot s; first page of SSC FW |
| \$C800-\$CFFF | Expansion ROM | Eight 256-byte pages reserved for a 2K ROM or PROM; SSC maps its FW onto \$C800-\$CEFF (Table 4-4) |

Table A-4. Memory Usage Map

ZERO PAGE LOCATIONS

The SSC makes use of these zero-page locations (Table A-5):

| Address | Name | Description |
|---------|-----------|---|
| * \$24 | CH | Monitor pointer to current position of cursor on screen |
| \$26 | SLOT16 | Usually (slot# x 16); that is, \$s0 |
| \$27 | CHARACTER | Input or output character |
| * \$28 | BASL | Monitor pointer to current screen line |
| \$2A | ZPTMP1 | Temporary storage (various uses) |
| \$2B | ZPTMP2 | Temporary storage (various uses) |
| \$35 | ZPTMP | Temporary storage (various uses) |
| * \$36 | CSWL | BASIC output hook (not for Pascal) |
| * \$37 | CSWH | (high byte of CSW) |
| * \$38 | KSWL | BASIC input hook (not for Pascal) |
| * \$39 | KSWH | (high byte of KSW) |
| * \$4E | RNDL | random number location, updated when looking for a keypress (not used when initialized by Pascal) |

* Not used when Pascal initializes SSC.

Table A-5. Zero-Page Locations Used by SSC

SCRATCHPAD RAM LOCATIONS

The SSC uses the Scratchpad RAM locations as listed in Table A-6.

| Address | Field name | Bit(s) | Interpretation |
|----------|------------|--------|---|
| \$0478+s | DELAYFLG | 0 - 1 | <FF> delay selection |
| | | 2 - 3 | <LF> delay selection |
| | | 4 - 5 | <CR> delay selection |
| | | 6 - 7 | Translate option |
| \$04F8+s | HANDSHKE | 0 - 7 | Buffer count for handshake (P8A Mode) |
| | PARAMETER | 0 - 7 | Accumulator for FW's command processor |
| \$0578+s | STATEFLG | 0 - 2 | Command mode when not 0 (Printer and Communications Modes only) |
| | | 0 - 4 | Enquire character (P8A Mode); dflt ETX |
| | | 3 - 5 | Slot to chain to (Communications Mode) |
| | | 6 | Set to 1 after lowercase input character |
| | | 7 | Terminal Mode when 1 (Comm Mode) |
| | | 7 | Enable <CR> gen. when 1 (other 3 modes) |
| \$05F8+s | CMDBYTE | 0 - 6 | Printer Mode default is <CTRL-I>; Comm Mode default is <CTRL-A> |
| | | 7 | Set to 1 to Zap control commands |
| \$0678+s | STSBYTE | | Status and IORESULT byte (Appendix F) |
| \$06F8+s | CHNBYTE | 0 - 2 | Current Apple screen slot (Comm Mode); when slot = 0, chaining is enabled |
| | | 3 - 7 | \$Cs00 space entry point (Comm Mode) |
| | PWDBYTE | 0 - 7 | Current printer width (other modes); for listing compensation, auto-<CR> |
| \$0778+s | BUFBYTE | 0 - 6 | One-byte input buffer (Comm Mode); used in conjunction with XOFF recognition |
| | | 7 | Set to 1 when buffer full (Comm Mode) |
| | COLBYTE | 0 - 7 | Current-column counter for tabbing, etc. (other 3 modes) |
| \$07F8+s | MISCFLG | 0 | Generate <LF> after <CR> when 1 |
| | | 1 | Printer Mode when 0; Comm Mode when 1 |
| | | 2 | Keyboard input enabled when 1 |
| | | 3 | <CTRL-S> (XOFF), <CTRL-R> and <CTRL-T> input checking when 1 |
| | | 4 | Pascal Op Sys when 1; BASIC when 0 |
| | | 5 | Discard <LF> input when 1 |
| | | 6 | Enable lowercase and special character generation when 1 (Comm Mode) |
| | | 6 | Tabbing option on when 1 (Printer Mode) |
| | | 7 | Echo output to Apple screen when 1 |

Table A-6. Scratchpad RAM Locations Used by SSC

PERIPHERAL CARD I/O SPACE

There are 16 bytes of I/O space allocated to each slot in the Apple II. Each set begins at address $\$C080 + (\text{slot} \times 16)$; for example, if the SSC is in slot 3, its group of bytes extends from $\$C0B0$ to $\$C0BF$. Table A-7 interprets the 6 bytes the SSC uses.

| Address | Register | Bit(s) | Interpretation |
|-------------|----------|--------|---|
| $\$C081+s0$ | DIPSW1 | 0 | SW1-6 is OFF when 1, ON when 0 |
| | (SW1-x) | 1 | SW1-5 is OFF when 1, ON when 0 |
| | | 4 - 7 | same as above for SW1-4 through SW1-1 |
| $\$C082+s0$ | DIPSW2 | 0 | Clear To Send (CTS) is true (-) when 0 |
| | (SW2-x) | 1 - 3 | same as above for SW2-5 through SW2-3 |
| | | 5 & 7 | same as above for SW2-2 & SW2-1 |
| $\$C088+s0$ | TDREG | 0 - 7 | ACIA Transmit Register (write) |
| | RDREG | 0 - 7 | ACIA Receive Register (read) |
| $\$C089+s0$ | STATUS | | ACIA Status/Reset Register |
| | | 1 0 | Parity error detected when 1 |
| | | 2 1 | Framing error detected when 1 |
| | | 6 2 | Overrun detected when 1 |
| | | 8 3 | ACIA Receive Register full when 1 |
| | | 16 4 | ACIA Transmit Register empty when 1 |
| | | 32 5 | Data Carrier Detect (DCD) true when 0 |
| | | 64 6 | Data Set Ready (DSR) true when 0 |
| | | 128 7 | Interrupt (IRQ) has occurred when 1 |
| $\$C08A+s0$ | COMMAND | | ACIA Command Register (read/write) |
| | | 0 | Data Terminal Ready (DTR): enable (1) or disable (0) receiver and all interrupts |
| | | 1 | When 1, allow STATUS bit 3 to cause IRQ |
| | | 2 - 3 | Control transmit interrupt, Request To Send (RTS) level, and transmitter |
| | | 4 | When 0, normal mode for receiver; when 1, echo mode (but bits 2 and 3 must be 0) |
| | | 5 - 7 | Control parity (values: Table 2-7) |
| $\$C08B+s0$ | CONTROL | | ACIA Control Register (read/write) |
| | | 0 - 3 | Baud rate: $\$0 = 16$ times external clock; $\$1 - \$F =$ decimal in Table 2-5 |
| | | 4 | When 1, use baud rate generator; when 0, use external clock (not supported) |
| | | 5 - 6 | Number of data bits: 8 (bit 5 and 6 = 0) 7 (5 = 1, 6 = 0), 6 (5 = 0, 6 = 1) or 5 (bit 5 and 6 both = 1) |
| | | 7 | Number of stop bits: 1 (bit 7 = 0); if bit 7 = 1, then 1-1/2 (with 5 data bits, no parity), 1 (8 data plus parity) or 2 |

Table A-7. SSC Registers in Peripheral Card I/O Space

SSC ENTRY POINTS

This section contains the SSC firmware entry points for the Apple II Monitor, BASIC, Pascal 1.0 and Pascal 1.1. The Pascal 1.1 entry point offsets conform to the Firmware card protocol outlined in the first section of this appendix.

MONITOR ROM ENTRY POINTS

The SSC uses these entry points in the Monitor ROM, unless Pascal initializes the SSC.

| Address | Name | Description |
|---------|--------|--|
| \$FDED | COUT | sends a character to output hook (chaining) used for chaining |
| \$FE89 | SETKBD | sets KSW to point to keyboard (reset) |
| \$FE93 | SETSCR | sets CSW to point to Apple screen (reset) |
| \$FF58 | IORTS | known position of an RTS instruction |
| \$FDF6 | VIDOUT | sends a character to the Apple screen |

Table A-8. Monitor ROM Entry Points Used by SSC

BASIC ENTRY POINTS

Here are the entry point addresses, and the contents of the 6502 registers on entry to and on exit from BASIC I/O routines:

| Addr. | Routine | X Register | Y Register | A Register |
|--------|---|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| \$Cs00 | Initialization | | | |
| | On entry | anything | anything | anything |
| | On exit | (unchanged) | (unchanged) | character |
| Notes: | CSW and/or KSW points to \$Cs00. The character in the A register is output unless KSW points to \$Cs00 and CSW does <u>not</u> point to \$Cs00. | | | |
| \$Cs05 | Input | | | |
| | On entry | anything | anything | anything |
| | On exit | (unchanged) | (unchanged) | character in |
| Notes: | Character in is from ACIA or keyboard. | | | |
| \$Cs07 | Output | | | |
| | On entry | anything | anything | character out |
| | On exit | (unchanged) | (unchanged) | (changed) |
| Notes: | Character out is transmitted through the ACIA. | | | |

Table A-9. BASIC Entry Points Used by SSC

PASCAL 1.0 ENTRY POINTS

There are three Pascal 1.0 entry points: one for initialization, one for read operations, and one for write operations. These entry points are direct addresses.

| Addr. | Routine | X Register | Y Register | A Register |
|--------|--|------------|------------|---------------|
| \$C800 | Initialization | | | |
| | On entry | \$Cs | \$s0 | anything |
| | On exit | \$Cs | \$s0 | (unchanged) |
| Notes: | \$C800 space is enabled. Firmware initializes SSC to default values plus SW1 and SW2 selections. | | | |
| \$C84D | Read | | | |
| | On entry | \$Cs | \$s0 | anything |
| | On exit | \$Cs | \$Cs | character in |
| Notes: | \$C800 space is enabled. Pascal returns ACIA or keyboard data in the A Register and location \$678+ts with high bit cleared. | | | |
| \$C9AA | Write | | | |
| | On entry | \$Cs | \$s0 | character out |
| | On exit | error code | \$Cs | (changed) |
| Notes: | \$C800 space is enabled. Output character is transmitted through the ACIA. Pascal posts error code to IORESULT. | | | |

Table A-10. Pascal 1.0 Entry Points Used by SSC

PASCAL 1.1 ENTRY POINTS

The Pascal 1.1 entry point protocol is outlined in the first section of this appendix. The values given here are the addresses of the routines. Unlike Pascal 1.0, Pascal 1.1 enters these routines using indirect addressing.

| Addr. | Offset for | Value | X Register | Y Register | A Register |
|--------|---|----------|------------|------------|------------------|
| \$Cs0D | Initialization | \$(Cs)8E | | | |
| | On entry | | \$Cs | \$s0 | anything |
| | On exit | | \$00 | \$s0 | (changed) |
| Notes: | \$C800 space is enabled. Firmware initializes SSC to default values plus SW1 and SW2 selections. | | | | |
| \$Cs0E | Read | \$(Cs)94 | | | |
| | On entry | | \$Cs | \$s0 | anything |
| | On exit | | error code | \$Cs | char. in |
| Notes: | \$C800 space is enabled. Character in from ACIA or keyboard is returned in the A Register. | | | | |
| \$Cs0F | Write | \$(Cn)97 | | | |
| | On entry | | \$Cs | \$s0 | char. out |
| | On exit | | error code | \$Cs | (changed) |
| Notes: | \$C800 space is enabled. The byte in the A Register is sent out through the ACIA. | | | | |
| \$Cs10 | Status | \$(Cs)9A | | | |
| | On entry | | \$Cs | \$s0 | request (0 or 1) |
| | On exit | | error code | \$s0 | error code |
| Notes: | \$C800 space is enabled. Request = 0 asks ACIA whether it is ready to transmit another byte; request = 1 asks ACIA whether it has an input character available. On exit, carry bit = 0 for Yes or 1 for No. | | | | |

Table A-11. Pascal 1.1 Offsets Used by SSC

OTHER SPECIAL FIRMWARE LOCATIONS

The SSC firmware uses several other addresses for predefined purposes. Table A-12 lists these locations.

| Address | Value | Purpose |
|---------|-------|--|
| \$Cs05 | \$38 | Pascal serial/firmware card identifier (as well as BASIC input entry point) |
| \$Cs07 | \$18 | Pascal serial/firmware card identifier (as well as BASIC output entry point) |
| \$Cs0B | \$01 | Pascal 1.1 generic signature byte (\$01 = firmware card) |
| \$Cs0C | \$31 | Pascal 1.1 Device Signature byte (\$31 = serial or parallel I/O card #1) |
| \$Cs11 | \$85 | Pascal 1.1 optional routines flag (nonzero value = not supported) |
| \$CsFF | \$08 | Firmware revision level |

Table A-12. SSC Special Firmware Locations

SSC FIRMWARE LISTINGS

```

0000:      2 *****
0000:      3 *
0000:      4 * APPLE II SSC FIRMWARE
0000:      5 *
0000:      6 * BY LARRY KENYON
0000:      7 * -JANUARY 1981- *****
0000:      8 *
0000:      9 * (C) COPYRIGHT 1981 BY APPLE COMPUTER, INC. *
0000:     10 *
0000:     11 *****
0000:     12 *
0000:     13 * VARIABLE DEFINITIONS
0000:     14 *
0000:     15 *****
0000:     16 *****
0000:     17 * ZERO PAGE EQU *
0000:     18 *****
0024:     19 CH EQU $24 ;CURSOR HORIZONTAL POSITION
0026:     20 SLOT16 EQU $26 ;SAVE $NO TO FREE UP Y-REG
0027:     21 CHARACTER EQU $27 ;OUTPUT, SCREEN AND INPUT CHARS
0028:     22 BASL EQU $28 ;BASE SCREEN ADDRESS POINTER
0035:     23 ZPTMP EQU $35 ;WORKHORSE TEMPORARY
002A:     24 ZPTMP1 EQU $2A ;WHEN ZPTMP ISN'T ENOUGH
002B:     25 ZPTMP2 EQU $2B ;TEMPORARIES, TEMPORARIES!
0036:     26 CSWL EQU $36 ;CHAR OUT VECTOR
0037:     27 CSWH EQU $37
0038:     28 KSWL EQU $38 ;CHAR IN VECTOR
0039:     29 KSWH EQU $39
003C:     30 A1L EQU $3C ;BATCH MOVE POINTER
004E:     31 RNDL EQU $4E ;RANDOM NUMBER SEED
004F:     32 RNDH EQU $4F
0000:     33 *****
0000:     34 * GENERAL EQUATES *
0000:     35 *****
0100:     36 STACK EQU $100 ;SYSTEM STACK BLOCK
0200:     37 INBUFF EQU $200 ;SYSTEM INPUT BUFFER
C000:     38 KBD EQU $C000 ;KEYBOARD INPUT
C010:     39 KBDSTRB EQU $C010 ;KEYBOARD CLEAR
CFFF:     40 ROMSOFF EQU $CFFF ;DISABLES CO-RES. $C800 ROMS
0000:     41 *****
0000:     42 * SSC CARD ADDRESSES *
0000:     43 *****
C081:     44 DIPSW1 EQU $C081 ;(+ $NO) DIPSWITCH BLOCK 1
C082:     45 DIPSW2 EQU $C082 ;(+ $NO) DIPSWITCH BLOCK 2
C088:     46 TDREG EQU $C088 ;(+ $NO) TRANSMIT DATA REG (WRITE)
C088:     47 RDREG EQU $C088 ;(+ $NO) READ DATA REG (READ)
C089:     48 STREG EQU $C089 ;(+ $NO) STATUS REGISTER (READ)
C089:     49 RESET EQU $C089 ;(+ $NO) SOFTWARE RESET (WRITE)
C08A:     50 CMDREG EQU $C08A ;(+ $NO) COMMAND REGISTER (R/W)
C08B:     51 CTLREG EQU $C08B ;(+ $NO) CONTROL REGISTER (R/W)

```

```

0000: 53 *****
0000: 54 * BIT-> B7 B6 B5 B4 B3 B2 B1 B0
0000: 55 * +-----+
0000: 56 * DIPSW1 S1 S2 S3 S4 Z Z S5 S6 (LEFT DIPSWITCH)
0000: 57 *
0000: 58 * (S1-S4 USED FOR BAUD RATE, S5-S6 FOR FIRMWARE MODE)
0000: 59 *
0000: 60 * DIPSW2 S1 Z S2 Z S3 S4 S5 CTS (RIGHT DIPSWITCH)
0000: 61 *
0000: 62 * STREG INT DSR DCD TDR RDR OVR FE PE
0000: 63 *
0000: 64 * CTLREG STB << WL >> CK << BAUD RATE >>
0000: 65 *
0000: 66 * CMDREG <<PARITY >> ECH <<XMIT>> RE DTR
0000: 67 *
0000: 68 *****
0000: 69 *****
0000: 70 * SCREEN VARIABLES: PPC AND SIC MODES *
0000: 71 *****
0538: 72 CMDBYTE EQU $5F8-$C0 ;HOLDS COMMAND CHARACTER (PPC & CIC)
0438: 73 HANDSHKE EQU $4F8-$C0 ;SIC P8A CHAR COUNTER FOR ETX/ACK
0438: 74 PARAMETER EQU $4F8-$C0 ;ACCUMULATOR FOR CMD PARAMETER
04B8: 75 STATEFLG EQU $578-$C0 ;
0000: 76 * B7=CR GEN ENB FLAG B6=AFTER LC INPUT FLG
0000: 77 * B2-B0=COMMAND INTERPRETER STATES
0000: 78 * 0 0 0 IDLE
0000: 79 * 0 0 1 CMD CHAR RECEIVED
0000: 80 * 0 1 0 COLLECT <N> UNTIL CHAR THEN DO COMMAND
0000: 81 * 0 1 1 SKIP UNTIL SPACE, THEN GOTO STATE 4
0000: 82 * 1 0 0 E/D COMMANDS
0000: 83 * 1 0 1 UNUSED
0000: 84 * 1 1 0 WAIT UNTIL CR THEN SET STATE TO ZERO
0000: 85 * 1 1 1 WAIT UNTIL CR THEN DO PROC INDICATED BY PARM
0000: 86 *
0000: 87 * (B4-B0 DETERMINE ENQUIRE CHAR FOR P8A MODE)
0000: 88 *
03B8: 89 DELAYFLG EQU $478-$C0
0000: 90 * B7-B6=SCREEN TRANSLATION OPTIONS
0000: 91 * 0 0 LC->UC
0000: 92 * 0 1 NO TRANSLATION
0000: 93 * 1 0 LC->UC INVERSE
0000: 94 * 1 1 LC->UC, UC->UC INVERSE
0000: 95 * (1-3 WILL ALLOW LC CHARS TO PASS THRU MONITOR)
0000: 96 *
0000: 97 * B5-B4=CR DELAY 0 0 = NO DELAY
0000: 98 * B3-B2=LF DELAY 0 1 = 32 MILLISEC
0000: 99 * B1-B0=FF DELAY 1 0 = 1/4 SEC
0000: 100 * 1 1 = 2 SEC
0000: 101 *
05B8: 102 STSBYTE EQU $678-$C0 ;STATUS/IORESULT/INPUT BYTE
0638: 103 PWDBYTE EQU $6F8-$C0 ;PRINTER (FORMAT) WIDTH
06B8: 104 COLBYTE EQU $778-$C0 ;COLUMN POSITION COUNTER
0738: 105 MISCPFLG EQU $7F8-$C0 ;
0000: 106 * B7=ECHO BIT B6=TABBING OPTION ENABLE
0000: 107 * B5=LINEFEED EAT B4=PASCAL/BASIC FLAG
0000: 108 * B3=XOFF ENB FLAG B2=KEYBOARD ENB
0000: 109 * B1=PPC/CIC MODE B0=LF GENERATE ENB
0000: 110 *

```

```

0000: 112 *****
0000: 113 * TEMP SCREEN VARS (SLOT INDEPENDENT) *
0000: 114 *****
07F8: 115 MSL0T EQU $7F8 ;BUFFER FOR HI SLOT ADDR ($CN)
0000: 116 *****
0000: 117 * SCREEN VARIABLES: CIC MODE *
0000: 118 *****
0000: 119 *
0000: 120 * STATEFLG: B7=TERMINAL MODE FLAG
0000: 121 * B3-B5=CHAIN SLOT
0000: 122 *
0638: 123 CHNBYTE EQU $6F8-$C0 ;CURRENT OUTPUT SCREEN ($CN00 ENTRY)
0000: 124 *
0000: 125 * B0-B7=CN00 ENTRY
0000: 126 *
06B8: 127 BUFBYTE EQU $778-$C0 ;BUFFER FOR ONE
0000: 128 * INPUT BYTE: HIGH BIT IS SET
0000: 129 * WHEN BUFFER IS FULL
0000: 130 *
0000: 131 * MISCFLG: B6=TERM MODE SHIFT ENB
0000: 132 *
0000: 133 * OTHER SLOT VARIABLES AS DEFINED FOR PPC AND SIC MODES
0000: 134 *
0000: 135 *****
0000: 136 * MONITOR SUBROUTINES *
0000: 137 *****
FD0D: 138 COUT EQU $FDED ;CHARACTER OUT (THRU CSW)
FE89: 139 SETKBD EQU $FE89 ;SETS KSW TO APPLE KEYBOARD
FF58: 140 IORTS EQU $FF58 ;KNOWN "RTS" LOCATION
FCBA: 141 NXTA1 EQU $FCBA ;INCREMENT A1H,L AND CMP TO A2H,L
FE93: 142 SETSCR EQU $FE93 ;SETS CSW TO APPLE SCREEN
FDF6: 143 VIDOUT EQU $FDF6 ;OUTPUT A CHAR TO APPLE SCREEN
0000: 144 CHN SSC.CN00
0000: 1 *****
0000: 2 * *
0000: 3 * APPLE II SSC FIRMWARE *
0000: 4 * *
0000: 5 * BY LARRY KENYON *
0000: 6 * *
0000: 7 * -JANUARY 1981- *****
0000: 8 * *
0000: 9 * (C) COPYRIGHT 1981 BY APPLE COMPUTER, INC. *
0000: 10 * *
0000: 11 *****
0000: 12 * *
0000: 13 * CN00 SPACE CODE *
0000: 14 * *
0000: 15 *****
----- NEXT OBJECT FILE NAME IS SSC.DCLS.OBJO
C700: 16 ORG $C700
C700: 17 *
C700:2C 58 FF 18 BINIT BIT IORTS ;SET THE V-FLAG
C703:70 0C 19 BVS BENTRY ;<ALWAYS>
C705:38 20 IENTRY SEC ;BASIC INPUT ENTRY
C706:90 21 DFB $90 ;OPCODE FOR BCC
C707:18 22 OENTRY CLC ;BASIC OUTPUT ENTRY
C708:B8 23 CLV
C709:50 06 24 BVC BENTRY ;<ALWAYS> SKIP AROUND PASCAL 1.1 ENTRY

```


| | | | |
|---------------|------|---|--|
| C70B:01 | 25 | DFB \$01 | ;GENERIC SIGNATURE BYTE |
| C70C:31 | 26 | DFB \$31 | ;DEVICE SIGNATURE BYTE |
| C70D:8E | 27 | DFB >PINIT | |
| C70E:94 | 28 | DFB >PREAD | |
| C70F:97 | 29 | DFB >PWRITE | |
| C710:9A | 30 | DFB >PSTATUS | |
| C711:85 27 | 31 | BENTRY STA CHARACTER | |
| C713:86 35 | 32 | STX ZPTMP | ;INPUT BUFFER INDEX |
| C715:8A | 33 | TXA | ;SAVE X AND Y REGS ON STACK |
| C716:48 | 34 | PHA | |
| C717:98 | 35 | TYA | |
| C718:48 | 36 | PHA | |
| C719:08 | 37 | PHP | ;SAVE ENTRY FLAGS |
| C71A:78 | 38 | SEI | ;NO RUPTS DURING SLOT DETERMINATION |
| C71B:8D FF CF | 39 | STA ROMSOFF | ;SWITCH OUT OTHER \$C800 ROMS |
| C71E:20 58 FF | 40 | JSR IORTS | |
| C721:BA | 41 | TSX | |
| C722:BD 00 01 | 42 | LDA STACK,X | ;RECOVER \$CN |
| C725:8D F8 07 | 43 | STA MSLOT | |
| C728:AA | 44 | TAX | ;X-REG WILL GENERALLY BE \$CN |
| C729:0A | 45 | ASL A | |
| C72A:0A | 46 | ASL A | ;DETERMINE \$NO |
| C72B:0A | 47 | ASL A | |
| C72C:0A | 48 | ASL A | |
| C72D:85 26 | 49 | STA SLOT16 | |
| C72F:A8 | 50 | TAY | ;Y-REG WILL GENERALLY BE \$NO |
| C730:28 | 51 | PLP | ;RESTORE RUPTS |
| C731:50 29 | 52 | BVC NORMIO | |
| C733: | 53 * | | |
| C733: | 54 * | BASIC INITIALIZATION | |
| C733: | 55 * | | |
| C733:1E 38 05 | 56 | ASL CMDBYTE,X | ;ALWAYS ENABLE COMMANDS |
| C736:5E 38 05 | 57 | LSR CMDBYTE,X | |
| C739:B9 8A C0 | 58 | LDA CMDREG,Y | ;JUST HAD A POWER-ON OR PROGRAM RESET? |
| C73C:29 1F | 59 | AND #\$1F | |
| C73E:D0 05 | 60 | BNE BINIT1 | |
| C740:A9 EF | 61 | LDA #\$EF | ;IF SO, GO JOIN INIT IN PROGRESS |
| C742:20 05 C8 | 62 | JSR INIT1 | |
| C745: | 63 * | | |
| C745:E4 37 | 64 | BINIT1 CPX CSWH | |
| C747:D0 0B | 65 | BNE FROMIN | |
| C749:A9 07 | 66 | LDA #>OENTRY | |
| C74B:C5 36 | 67 | CMP CSWL | ;IF CSW IS ALREADY POINTING TO OENTRY, |
| C74D:F0 05 | 68 | BEQ FROMIN | ; THEN WE MUST HAVE COME FROM KSW |
| C74F:85 36 | 69 | STA CSWL | ;OTHERWISE, SET CSW TO OENTRY |
| C751:18 | 70 | FROMOUT CLC | ;INDICATE WE ARE CALLED FOR OUTPUT |
| C752:90 08 | 71 | BCC NORMIO | ; <ALWAYS> |
| C754:E4 39 | 72 | FROMIN CPX KSWH | ;MAKE SURE KSW POINTS HERE |
| C756:D0 F9 | 73 | BNE FROMOUT | |
| C758:A9 05 | 74 | LDA #>IENTRY | |
| C75A:85 38 | 75 | STA KSWL | ;SET UP KSW (NOTE CARRY SET FROM CPX) |
| C75C: | 76 * | | |
| C75C: | 77 * | BRANCH TO APPROPRIATE BASIC I/O ROUTINE | |
| C75C: | 78 * | | |
| C75C:BD 38 07 | 79 | NORMIO LDA MISCFLG,X | ;SEPARATE CIC MODE FROM OTHERS |
| C75F:29 02 | 80 | AND #\$02 | ;NOT ZERO FOR CIC MODE |
| C761:08 | 81 | PHP | ;SAVE CIC MODE INDICATION |
| C762:90 03 | 82 | BCC BOUTPUT | |

```

C764:4C BF C8 83 JMP BINPUT
C767: 84 *
C767:BD B8 04 85 BOUTPUT LDA STATEFLG,X ;CHECK FOR AFTER LOWERCASE INPUT
C76A:48 86 PHA
C76B:0A 87 ASL A
C76C:10 0E 88 BPL BOUTPUT1 ;SKIP IF NOT
C76E:A6 35 89 LDX ZPTMP
C770:A5 27 90 LDA CHARACTER
C772:09 20 91 ORA #$20
C774:9D 00 02 92 STA INBUFF,X ;RESTORE LOWERCASE IN BUFFER
C777:85 27 93 STA CHARACTER ;AND FOR OUTPUT ECHO
C779:AE F8 07 94 LDX MSLOT
C77C:68 95 BOUTPUT1 PLA
C77D:29 BF 96 AND #$BF ;ZERO THE FLAG
C77F:9D B8 04 97 STA STATEFLG,X
C782:28 98 PLP ;RETRIEVE CIC MODE INDICATION
C783:F0 06 99 BEQ BOUTPUT2 ;BRANCH FOR PPC, SIC MODES
C785:20 63 CB 100 JSR OUTPUT ;CIC MODE OUTPUT
C788:4C B5 C8 101 JMP CICEXIT ;FINISH BY CHECKING FOR TERM MODE
C78B: 102 *
C78B:4C FC C8 103 BOUTPUT2 JMP SEROUT
C78E: 104 *****
C78E: 105 * *
C78E: 106 * NEW PASCAL INTERFACE ENTRIES *
C78E: 107 * *
C78E: 108 *****
C78E:20 00 C8 109 PINIT JSR PASCALINIT ;
C791:A2 00 110 LDX #0 ;NO ERROR POSSIBLE
C793:60 111 RTS
C794:4C 9B C8 112 PREAD JMP PASCALREAD ;
C797:4C AA C9 113 PWRITE JMP PASCALWRITE ;
C79A: 114 *
C79A: 115 * NEW PASCAL STATUS REQUEST
C79A: 116 *
C79A: 117 * A-REG=0 -> READY FOR OUTPUT?
C79A: 118 * A-REG=1 -> HAS INPUT BEEN RECEIVED?
C79A: 119 *
C79A:4A 120 PSTATUS LSR A ;SAVE REQUEST TYPE IN CARRY
C79B:20 9B C9 121 JSR PENTRY ;(PRESERVES CARRY)
C79E:B0 08 122 BCS PSTATIN
C7A0:20 F5 CA 123 JSR SROUT ;READY FOR OUTPUT?
C7A3:F0 06 124 BEQ PSTATUS2
C7A5:18 125 CLC
C7A6:90 03 126 BCC PSTATUS2 ;CARRY CLEAR FOR NOT READY
C7A8: 127 *
C7A8:20 D2 CA 128 PSTATIN JSR SRIN ;SETS CARRY CORRECTLY
C7AB:BD B8 05 129 PSTATUS2 LDA STSBYTE,X ;GET ERROR FLAGS
C7AE:AA 130 TAX
C7AF:60 131 RTS
C7B0: 132 *****
C7B0: 133 * ROUTINE TO SEND A CHARACTER TO ANOTHER CARD *
C7B0: 134 *****
C7B0:A2 03 135 SENDCD LDX #3
C7B2:B5 36 136 SAVEHOOK LDA CSWL,X
C7B4:48 137 PHA
C7B5:CA 138 DEX
C7B6:10 FA 139 BPL SAVEHOOK
C7B8: 140 *

```

```

C7B8:      141 * NOW PUT CARD ADDRESS IN HOOK
C7B8:      142 *
C7B8:AE F8 07 143      LDX  MSLOT
C7BB:BD 38 06 144      LDA  CHNBYTE,X
C7BE:85 36    145      STA  CSWL
C7C0:BD B8 04 146      LDA  STATEFLG,X ;GET SLOT #
C7C3:29 38    147      AND  #$38
C7C5:4A       148      LSR  A
C7C6:4A       149      LSR  A
C7C7:4A       150      LSR  A
C7C8:09 C0    151      ORA  #$C0      ;FORM $CN
C7CA:85 37    152      STA  CSWH
C7CC:        153 *
C7CC:        154 * OUTPUT TO THE PERIPHERAL
C7CC:        155 *
C7CC:8A       156      TXA          ;SAVE $CN
C7CD:48       157      PHA
C7CE:A5 27    158      LDA  CHARACTER
C7D0:48       159      PHA
C7D1:09 80    160      ORA  #$80      ;80 COL BOARDS WANT HI-BIT ON
C7D3:20 ED FD 161      JSR  COUT
C7D6:        162 *
C7D6:        163 * NOW RESTORE EVERYTHING THE OTHER CARD MAY HAVE CLOBBED
C7D6:        164 *
C7D6:68       165      PLA
C7D7:85 27    166      STA  CHARACTER
C7D9:68       167      PLA
C7DA:8D F8 07 168      STA  MSLOT
C7DD:AA       169      TAX
C7DE:0A       170      ASL  A
C7DF:0A       171      ASL  A
C7E0:0A       172      ASL  A
C7E1:0A       173      ASL  A
C7E2:85 26    174      STA  SLOT16
C7E4:8D FF CF 175      STA  ROMSOFF
C7E7:        176 *
C7E7:        177 * PUT BACK CSWL INTO CHNBYTE
C7E7:        178 *
C7E7:A5 36    179      LDA  CSWL
C7E9:9D 38 06 180      STA  CHNBYTE,X
C7EC:        181 *
C7EC:A2 00    182      LDX  #0
C7EE:68       183 RESTORHOOK PLA
C7EF:95 36    184      STA  CSWL,X
C7F1:E8       185      INX
C7F2:E0 04    186      CPX  #4
C7F4:90 F8    187      BCC  RESTORHOOK
C7F6:        188 *
C7F6:AE F8 07 189      LDX  MSLOT
C7F9:60       190      RTS
C7FA:        191 *
C7FA:C1 D0 D0 192      ASC  "APPLE"
C7FD:CC C5    193
C7FF:08       193      DFB  $8
C800:        194 *

```



```

C800:      196      CHN  SSC.C800
C800:      1 *****
C800:      2 *
C800:      3 * APPLE II SSC FIRMWARE
C800:      4 *
C800:      5 * BY LARRY KENYON
C800:      6 *
C800:      7 * -JANUARY 1981- *****
C800:      8 *
C800:      9 * (C) COPYRIGHT 1981 BY APPLE COMPUTER, INC. *
C800:     10 *
C800:     11 *****
C800:     12 *
C800:     13 * C800 SPACE: HIGH LEVEL STUFF *
C800:     14 *
C800:     15 *****
C800:     16 * PASCAL 1.0 INIT ENTRY *
C800:     17 *****
----- NEXT OBJECT FILE NAME IS SSC.DCLS.OBJ1
C800:     18      ORG  $C800
C800:20 9B C9 19 PASCALINIT JSR PENTRY ;PASCAL 1.0 INITIALIZATION ENTRY
C803:A9 16 20 LDA  #$16 ;NO XOFF, ECHO, LF EAT, OR LF GEN
C805:48 21 INIT1 PHA ;GOES TO MISCFLG AFTER MODIFICATION
C806:A9 00 22 LDA  #0
C808:9D B8 04 23 STA  STATEFLG,X
C80B:9D B8 03 24 STA  DELAYFLG,X
C80E:9D 38 04 25 STA  HANDSHKE,X
C811:9D B8 05 26 STA  STSBYTE,X
C814:9D 38 06 27 STA  PWDBYTE,X
C817:9D B8 06 28 STA  COLBYTE,X
C81A:B9 82 C0 29 LDA  DIPSW2,Y ;SET LF GEN OPTION FROM D2-S5
C81D:85 2B 30 STA  ZPTMP2 ;SAVE FOR LATER
C81F:4A 31 LSR  A ;S5-> CARRY
C820:4A 32 LSR  A ;IF S5=ON=0 THEN LEAVE MISCFLG ALONE
C821:90 04 33 BCC  INIT1A
C823:68 34 PLA ;OTHERWISE, MAKE SURE LF GEN
C824:29 FE 35 AND  #$FE ;ENABLE IS RESET
C826:48 36 PHA ;
C827:B8 37 INIT1A CLV ;V WILL BE CLEAR FOR CIC MODE
C828:B9 81 C0 38 LDA  DIPSW1,Y
C82B:4A 39 LSR  A ;SIC MODES SET CARRY
C82C:B0 07 40 BCS  INIT2 ;BRANCH FOR SIC MODES
C82E:4A 41 LSR  A
C82F:B0 0E 42 BCS  INIT2B ;PPC MODE BRANCH
C831:A9 01 43 LDA  #$01 ;CTL-A
C833:D0 3D 44 BNE  INIT5 ;<ALWAYS> CIC MODE BRANCH
C835: 45 *
C835:4A 46 INIT2 LSR  A ;SET CARRY FOR P8A
C836:A9 03 47 LDA  #$03 ;SET ETX AS DEFAULT INQUIRY CHAR
C838:B0 02 48 BCS  INIT2A ;BRANCH FOR P8A
C83A:A9 80 49 LDA  #$80 ;FOR P8 SET AUTO CR GEN
C83C:9D B8 04 50 INIT2A STA  STATEFLG,X
C83F:2C 58 FF 51 INIT2B BIT  IORTS ;SET V-FLAG FOR PPC, SIC MODES
C842:A5 2B 52 LDA  ZPTMP2
C844:29 20 53 AND  #$20 ;SET CR DELAY
C846:49 20 54 EOR  #$20 ;SO 1=ENB, 0=DISABLE
C848:9D B8 03 55 STA  DELAYFLG,X ;FROM D2-S2
C84B: 56 *

```

```

C84B:70 0A      57          BVS INIT3      ;<ALWAYS> BRANCH AROUND PASCAL
C84D:           58          *****
C84D:           59 * PASCAL 1.0 READ ENTRY *
C84D:           60 * (MUST BE AT $C84D) *
C84D:           61          *****
C84D:20 9B C8   62 PREAD0 JSR PASCALREAD ;DO PASCAL 1.1 READ
C850:AE F8 07   63          LDX MSL0T      ;MODIFY FOR 1.0
C853:9D B8 05   64          STA STSBYTE,X ;CHARACTER READ
C856:60          65          RTS
C857:           66          *****
C857:           67 * NOW WHERE WERE WE??? *
C857:           68          *****
C857:           69 *
C857:A5 2B      70 INIT3 LDA ZPTMP2      ;PPC, SIC MODES USE SWITCHES
C859:4A          71          LSR A          ; TO SET PWIDTH, CR DELAY
C85A:4A          72          LSR A
C85B:29 03      73          AND #$03
C85D:A8          74          TAY
C85E:F0 04      75          BEQ INIT4
C860:           76 *
C860:68          77          PLA          ;RESET VIDEO ENABLE FOR PWIDTH#40
C861:29 7F      78          AND #$7F
C863:48          79          PHA
C864:           80 *
C864:B9 A6 C9   81 INIT4 LDA PWD/TBL,Y
C867:9D 38 06   82          STA PWD/BYTE,X
C86A:A4 26      83          LDY SLOT16
C86C:           84 *
C86C:68          85          PLA          ;CLEAR CIC BIT IN FUTURE MISCFLG
C86D:29 95      86          AND #$95      ; (AND TABBING, XOFF AND LF EAT BITS)
C86F:48          87          PHA
C870:A9 09      88          LDA #$09      ;CTL-I
C872:           89 *
C872:9D 38 05   90 INIT5 STA CMD/BYTE,X ;CMD ESC CHAR (IGNORED FOR SIC MODES)
C875:68          91          PLA
C876:9D 38 07   92          STA MISCFLG,X ;SET MISCFLG FLAGS
C879:           93 *
C879:           94 * NOW FOR THE ACIA INITIALIZATION ROUTINE
C879:           95 *
C879:A5 2B      96 INITACIA LDA ZPTMP2      ;DIPSW2
C87B:48          97          PHA
C87C:29 A0      98          AND #$A0      ;DATA BIT OPTIONS FOR CIC MODE
C87E:50 02      99          BVC INITACIA1 ;BRANCH FOR CIC MODE
C880:29 80      100         AND #$80      ;8 DATA, 1 OR 2 STOP FOR SIC, PPC
C882:20 A1 CD   101 INITACIA1 JSR DATA/CMD1 ;SET CONTROL REG
C885:20 81 CD   102         JSR BAUD/CMD1 ;SET DIPSWITCH BAUD RATE
C888:68          103         PLA
C889:29 0C      104         AND #$0C      ;PARITY OPTIONS FOR CIC MODE
C88B:50 02      105         BVC INITACIA2 ;BRANCH FOR CIC MODE
C88D:A9 00      106         LDA #$0      ;DISABLE PARITY FOR SIC, PPC MODES
C88F:0A          107 INITACIA2 ASL A
C890:0A          108         ASL A
C891:0A          109         ASL A
C892:09 0B      110         ORA #$0B
C894:99 8A C0   111         STA CMD/REG,Y
C897:B9 88 C0   112         LDA RD/REG,Y ;THROW OUT THE STRANGE STUFF
C89A:60          113         RTS
C89B:           114          *****

```

```

C89B:      115 * PASCAL READ ROUTINE *
C89B:      116 *****
C89B:20 9B C9 117 PASCALREAD JSR PENTRY ;SHARED BY BOTH PASCAL VERSIONS
C89E:20 AA C8 118 PASCALREAD1 JSR GETCHAR ;GET ACIA/KBD DATA
C8A1:29 7F 119 AND #$7F ;CLEAR HIGH BIT FOR PASCAL
C8A3:AC F8 07 120 PASEXIT LDY MSLOT
C8A6:BE B8 05 121 LDX STSBYTE,Y ;ERROR STATUS-> X-REG
C8A9:60 122 RTS
C8AA:      123 *****
C8AA:      124 * GETCHAR ROUTINE WAITS FOR *
C8AA:      125 * THE NEXT CHAR FROM EITHER *
C8AA:      126 * THE ACIA OR KEYBOARD (IF *
C8AA:      127 * ENABLED). USED BY PASCAL *
C8AA:      128 * READ ROUTINE, XON WAIT, *
C8AA:      129 * AND ACK WAIT. DATA IS RE- *
C8AA:      130 * TURNED IN THE A-REGISTER *
C8AA:      131 *****
C8AA:20 FF CA 132 GETCHAR JSR INPUT ;ACIA DATA?
C8AD:B0 05 133 BCS GETCHAR1
C8AF:20 2C CC 134 JSR CKKBD ;KEYBOARD INPUT?
C8B2:90 F6 135 BCC GETCHAR
C8B4:60 136 GETCHAR1 RTS ;EXIT WHEN WE HAVE SOMETHING
C8B5:      137 *
C8B5:      138 CHN SSC.HILEV

```



```

C8B5:      2 *****
C8B5:      3 *
C8B5:      4 * APPLE II SSC FIRMWARE *
C8B5:      5 *
C8B5:      6 *   BY LARRY KENYON *
C8B5:      7 *
C8B5:      8 *   -FEBRUARY 1981- *****
C8B5:      9 *
C8B5:     10 * (C) COPYRIGHT 1981 BY APPLE COMPUTER, INC. *
C8B5:     11 *
C8B5:     12 *****
C8B5:     13 *
C8B5:     14 * CIC, SIC, PPC MODE HIGH-LEVEL *
C8B5:     15 *
C8B5:     16 *****
C8B5:     17 * CIC EXIT ROUTINE . . . *
C8B5:     18 *****
C8B5:20 1E CA 19 CICEXIT JSR CHECKTERM ;SEE IF WE'VE ENTERED TERMINAL MODE
C8B8:     20 *****
C8B8:     21 * BASIC EXIT ROUTINE *
C8B8:     22 *****
C8B8:68     23 BASICEXIT PLA
C8B9:A8     24 TAY
C8BA:68     25 PLA
C8BB:AA     26 TAX
C8BC:A5 27     27 LDA CHARACTER
C8BE:60     28 RTS
C8BF:     29 *****
C8BF:     30 * BASIC INPUT ROUTINE *
C8BF:     31 *****
C8BF:F0 29     32 BINPUT BEQ BINACIA ;BRANCH IF NOT CIC MODE
C8C1:BD B8 06 33 LDA BUFBYTE,X ;INPUT BUFFER FULL?
C8C4:10 05     34 BPL BINKBD
C8C6:5E B8 06 35 LSR BUFBYTE,X ;RESET BUFFER FULL
C8C9:D0 24     36 BNE BINACIA1 ;<ALWAYS>
C8CB:     37 *
C8CB:20 3E CC 38 BINKBD JSR GETKBD ;KEYBOARD DATA?
C8CE:90 1A     39 BCC BINACIA
C8D0:     40 *
C8D0:BD B8 03 41 BINEND LDA DELAYFLG,X
C8D3:29 C0     42 AND #$C0 ;TRANSLATE LOWERCASE TO UPPERCASE?
C8D5:F0 0E     43 BEQ BINEND1 ;IF SO, LET THE MONITOR DO IT
C8D7:A5 27     44 LDA CHARACTER ;IF NOT, SET FLAG IF
C8D9:C9 E0     45 CMP #$E0 ; THIS IS A LOWERCASE CHAR
C8DB:90 08     46 BCC BINEND1 ; FOR INPUT BUFFER CORRECTION
C8DD:BD B8 04 47 LDA STATEFLG,X ; (CIRCUMVENT APPLE MONITOR)
C8E0:09 40     48 ORA #$40
C8E2:9D B8 04 49 STA STATEFLG,X
C8E5:     50 *
C8E5:28     51 BINEND1 PLP
C8E6:F0 D0     52 BEQ BASICEXIT ;BRANCH IF NOT CIC MODE
C8E8:D0 CB     53 BNE CICEXIT ;<ALWAYS> CHECK TO SEE IF WE
C8EA:     54 * ENTERED TERM MODE (VIA KYBD ESCAPE
C8EA:20 FF CA 55 BINACIA JSR INPUT ;ACIA DATA?
C8ED:90 DC     56 BCC BINKBD
C8EF:20 11 CC 57 BINACIA1 JSR RESTORE ;DO BASIC CURSED DUTY
C8F2:28     58 PLP
C8F3:08     59 PHP ;GET CIC MODE INDICATOR

```

```

C8F4:F0 DA      60      BEQ  BINEND      ;SKIP IF NOT CIC MODE
C8F6:20 D1 C9   61      JSR  CKINPUT     ;LOOK FOR INPUT STREAM SPECIAL CHARS
C8F9:4C D0 C8   62      JMP  BINEND      ;
C8FC:           63      *****
C8FC:           64      * SIC, PPC BASIC OUTPUT ROUTINE *
C8FC:           65      *****
C8FC:20 1A CB   66 SEROUT JSR  CMDSEQCK     ;CHECK FOR A COMMAND SEQUENCE
C8FF:B0 B7      67      BCS  BASICEXIT   ;BRANCH IF WE WERE IN COMMAND MODE
C901:A5 27      68      LDA  CHARACTER   ;SAVE CHAR ON STACK
C903:48         69      PHA
C904:BD 38 07   70      LDA  MISCFLG,X   ;IF VIDEO OR TABBING ENABLED,
C907:29 C0      71      AND  #$C0       ; DON'T MESS WITH THE CURSOR
C909:D0 16      72      BNE  TABCHECK
C90B:           73      *
C90B:A5 24      74      LDA  CH          ;CHECK FOR COMMA TABBING
C90D:F0 42      75      BEQ  NOTAB       ;IF CH=0, THERE WAS NO TAB OR COMMA
C90F:C9 08      76      CMP  #8         ;INTEGER BASIC COMMA?
C911:F0 04      77      BEQ  COMMA
C913:C9 10      78      CMP  #16        ;APPLESOFT COMMA?
C915:D0 0A      79      BNE  TABCHECK
C917:09 F0      80 COMMA  ORA  #$F0
C919:3D B8 06   81      AND  COLBYTE,X   ;SET COL TO PREVIOUS TAB
C91C:18         82      CLC
C91D:65 24      83      ADC  CH          ;THEN INCREMENT TO NEXT TAB
C91F:85 24      84      STA  CH
C921:           85      *
C921:           86      *
C921:BD B8 06   87 TABCHECK LDA COLBYTE,X
C924:C5 24      88      CMP  CH          ;IS TABBING NEEDED?
C926:F0 29      89      BEQ  NOTAB       ;IF EQUAL THEN NO TAB NEEDED
C928:A9 A0      90      LDA  #$A0        ;SPACE FOR FORWARD TAB
C92A:90 08      91      BCC  TAB1
C92C:BD 38 07   92      LDA  MISCFLG,X   ;DON'T BACKSPACE UNLESS TABBING
C92F:0A         93      ASL  A           ; OPTION IS ENABLED
C930:10 1F      94      BPL  NOTAB
C932:A9 88      95      LDA  #$88        ;BACKSPACE FOR BACKTAB
C934:85 27      96 TAB1  STA  CHARACTER
C936:2C 58 FF   97      BIT  IORTS       ;SET V=1 TO INDICATE TABBING
C939:08         98      PHP
C93A:70 0C      99      BVS  TAB2       ;<ALWAYS> AROUND BATCH MOVE ENTRY
C93C:EA         100     NOP
C93D:           101     *****
C93D:           102     * SHORT BATCH MOVE: *
C93D:           103     * LOCATE AT $C93D FOR *
C93D:           104     * COMPATIBILITY WITH *
C93D:           105     * SIC P8 BLOCK MOVE. *
C93D:           106     *****
C93D:2C 58 FF   107 BATCHIN BIT IORTS
C940:50         108     DFB  $50          ;DUMMY BVC
C941:B8         109 BATCHOUT CLV          ;V=0 FOR OUTPUT ENTRY
C942:AE F8 07   110     LDX  MSLOT
C945:4C EF C9   111     JMP  BATCHIO
C948:           112     *****
C948:           113     * BURP . . . *
C948:           114     *****
C948:20 B5 C9   115 TAB2  JSR  ADJUST      ;ADJUST COLUMN COUNT
C94B:20 6B CB   116     JSR  OUTPUT2     ;DON'T GO TO SCREEN WHEN TABBING
C94E:4C 68 C9   117     JMP  FORCECR      ;SHARE SOME CODE. . .

```

```

C951:          118 *
C951:68        119 NOTAB PLA
C952:88        120 CLV
C953:08        121 PHP ;SAVE 'NO TAB' INDICATION
C954:85 27     122 NOTAB1 STA CHARACTER ;(FORCE CR REENTRY)
C956:48        123 PHA
C957:20 68 CB  124 JSR OUTPUT1 ;ENTER AFTER CMD SEQ CHECK
C95A:20 B5 C9  125 JSR ADJUST
C95D:68        126 PLA
C95E:49 8D     127 EOR #$8D ;WAS IT A CR?
C960:0A        128 ASL A
C961:D0 05     129 BNE FORCECR
C963:9D B8 06  130 STA COLBYTE,X ;IF SO, RESET COLUMN TO 0
C966:85 24     131 STA CH
C968:          132 *
C968:BD B8 04  133 FORCECR LDA STATEFLG,X ;FORCE CR DISABLED?
C96B:10 0D     134 BPL SEREND
C96D:BD 38 06  135 LDA PWDBYTE,X ;FORCE CR IF LIMIT REACHED
C970:F0 08     136 BEQ SEREND ;(FOR P8 POKE COMPATIBILITY)
C972:18        137 CLC
C973:FD B8 06  138 SBC COLBYTE,X
C976:A9 8D     139 LDA #$8D
C978:90 DA     140 BCC NOTAB1 ;BRANCH TO FORCE CR
C97A:          141 *
C97A:28        142 SEREND PLP
C97B:70 A4     143 BVS TABCHECK ;BRANCH IF TABBING
C97D:          144 *
C97D:BD 38 07  145 LDA MISCFLG,X ;DON'T MESS WITH CURSOR
C980:30 16     146 BMI SEREND2 ; WHEN VIDEO IS ON
C982:BC B8 06  147 LDY COLBYTE,X
C985:0A        148 ASL A
C986:30 0E     149 BMI SETCH ;SET CH TO VALUE OF COL FOR TABBING
C988:98        150 TYA
C989:A0 00     151 LDY #0
C98B:38        152 SEC
C98C:FD 38 06  153 SBC PWDBYTE,X ;
C98F:C9 F8     154 CMP #$F8 ;WITHIN 8 CHARS OF PWIDTH?
C991:90 03     155 BCC SETCH
C993:69 27     156 ADC #$27 ;IF SO, ADJUST TO WITHIN 8 OF 40
C995:A8        157 TAY
C996:84 24     158 SETCH STY CH
C998:          159 *
C998:4C B8 C8  160 SEREND2 JMP BASICEXIT ;THAT'S ALL
C99B:          161 *
C99B:          162 *****
C99B:          163 * PASCAL ENTRY ROUTINE *
C99B:          164 *****
C99B:8E F8 07  165 PENTRY STX MSL0T
C99E:84 26     166 STY SLO16
C9A0:A9 00     167 LDA #0
C9A2:9D B8 05  168 STA STSBYTE,X
C9A5:60        169 RTS
C9A6:          170 *
C9A6:          171 *****
C9A6:          172 * SIC MODE PRINTER WIDTH TABLE *
C9A6:          173 *****
C9A6:29        174 PWD1BL DFB $29 ;40 COLUMNS
C9A7:48        175 DFB $48 ;72 COLUMNS

```



```

C9A8:50      176      DFB $50      ;80 COLUMNS
C9A9:84      177      DFB $84      ;132 COLUMNS
C9AA:        178      *****
C9AA:        179      * PASCAL WRITE ROUTINE *
C9AA:        180      * (DOUBLES AS PASCAL *
C9AA:        181      * 1.0 ENTRY POINT) *
C9AA:        182      * -MUST BE AT $C9AA- *
C9AA:        183      *****
C9AA:85 27   184      PASCALWRITE STA CHARACTER
C9AC:20 9B C9 185      JSR PENTRY
C9AF:20 63 CB 186      JSR OUTPUT
C9B2:4C A3 C8 187      JMP PASEXIT ;LOAD X-REG WITH ERROR BYTE & RTS
C9B5:        188      *
C9B5:        189      *****
C9B5:        190      * COLUMN ADJUST ROUTINE *
C9B5:        191      * (PPC, SIC MODES ONLY) *
C9B5:        192      *****
C9B5:A5 27   193      ADJUST LDA CHARACTER
C9B7:49 08   194      EOR #$08 ;BACKSPACE?
C9B9:0A      195      ASL A
C9BA:F0 04   196      BEQ DECRCOL ;IF SO, DECREMENT COLUMN
C9BC:49 EE   197      EOR $EE ;DELETE? ($FF, RUB)
C9BE:D0 09   198      BNE CTRLTST
C9C0:DE B8 06 199      DECRCOL DEC COLBYTE,X ;DECREMENT COLUMN COUNT
C9C3:10 03   200      BPL ADJRTS
C9C5:9D B8 06 201      STA COLBYTE,X ;DON'T ALLOW TO GO BELOW 0
C9C8:60      202      ADJRTS RTS
C9C9:C9 C0   203      CTRLTST CMP #$C0 ;DON'T INCREMENT COLUMN COUNT FOR
C9CB:B0 FB   204      BCS ADJRTS ; CONTROL CHARACTERS
C9CD:FE B8 06 205      INC COLBYTE,X
C9D0:60      206      RTS
C9D1:        207      *****
C9D1:        208      * ROUTINE TO PROCESS SPECIAL INPUT CHARS *
C9D1:        209      *****
C9D1:BD 38 07 210      CKINPUT LDA MISCFLG,X
C9D4:29 08   211      AND #$08 ;INPUT CTL CHARS ENABLED?
C9D6:F0 16   212      BEQ CIEND
C9D8:        213      *
C9D8:BD B8 04 214      LDA STATEFLG,X
C9DB:A4 27   215      LDY CHARACTER
C9DD:C0 94   216      CPY #$94 ;CTL-T?
C9DF:D0 04   217      BNE CKINPUT1
C9E1:09 80   218      ORA #$80 ;SET TERMINAL MODE
C9E3:D0 06   219      BNE CKINPUT2 ;<ALWAYS>
C9E5:        220      *
C9E5:C0 92   221      CKINPUT1 CPY #$92 ;CONTROL-R?
C9E7:D0 05   222      BNE CIEND
C9E9:29 7F   223      AND #$7F ;RESET TERMINAL MODE
C9EB:9D B8 04 224      CKINPUT2 STA STATEFLG,X
C9EE:60      225      CIEND RTS
C9EF:        226      *

```

```

C9EF:      228      CHN  SSC.TERM
C9EF:      1  *****
C9EF:      2  *
C9EF:      3  * APPLE II SSC FIRMWARE
C9EF:      4  *
C9EF:      5  *   BY LARRY KENYON
C9EF:      6  *
C9EF:      7  *   -APRIL 1981-
C9EF:      8  *
C9EF:      9  * (C) COPYRIGHT 1981 BY APPLE COMPUTER, INC.
C9EF:     10  *
C9EF:     11  *****
C9EF:     12  * SHORT BLOCK MOVE
C9EF:     13  *****
C9EF:8A     14  BATCHIO TXA
C9F0:0A     15      ASL  A
C9F1:0A     16      ASL  A
C9F2:0A     17      ASL  A
C9F3:0A     18      ASL  A
C9F4:85 26     19      STA  SLOT16
C9F6:A9 00     20      LDA  #0
C9F8:9D B8 05  21      STA  STSBYTE,X ;ZERO ERROR INDICATION
C9FB:70 0F     22      BVS  MOVIN
C9FD:      23  *
C9FD:A0 00     24  MOVOUT LDY  #0
C9FF:B1 3C     25      LDA  (A1L),Y ;GET BUFFER DATA
CA01:85 27     26      STA  CHARACTER
CA03:20 02 CC  27      JSR  ACIAOUT ;SEND IT OUT THE ACIA
CA06:20 BA FC  28      JSR  NXTA1
CA09:90 F2     29      BCC  MOVOUT
CA0B:60     30      RTS
CA0C:      31  *
CA0C:20 D2 CA  32  MOVIN JSR  SRIN
CA0F:90 FB     33      BCC  MOVIN
CA11:B9 88 C0  34      LDA  RDREG,Y
CA14:A0 00     35      LDY  #0
CA16:91 3C     36      STA  (A1L),Y ;PUT ACIA DATA INTO BUFFER
CA18:20 BA FC  37      JSR  NXTA1
CA1B:90 EF     38      BCC  MOVIN
CA1D:60     39      RTS
CA1E:      40  *
CA1E:      41  *****
CA1E:      42  *
CA1E:      43  *   TERMINAL MODE ROUTINES
CA1E:      44  *
CA1E:      45  *****
CA1E:BD B8 04  46  CHECKTERM LDA STATEFLG,X ;HAVE WE ENTERED TERMINAL MODE?
CA21:10 31     47      BPL  TERMRTS ;IF NOT, A SIMPLE RTS WILL DO. . .
CA23:      48  *
CA23:      49  * WE ENTER THE WORLD OF TERMINAL MODE
CA23:      50  *
CA23:A9 02     51  TERMMODE LDA  #$02 ;START IN SHIFT-LOCK STATE
CA25:48     52      PHA  ;SHIFT STATE IS SAVED ON STACK
CA26:A9 7F     53      LDA  #$7F
CA28:20 E2 CD  54      JSR  KCMD1 ;RESET ECHO (DEFAULT TO FULL DUP)
CA2B:      55  *
CA2B:A4 24     56  TERMNEXT LDY  CH
CA2D:B1 28     57      LDA  (BASL),Y

```

| | | |
|---------------|-----|--|
| CA2F:85 27 | 58 | STA CHARACTER ;SAVE SCREEN CHARACTER |
| CA31:A9 07 | 59 | TERMNEXT1 LDA #\$07 ;IMPLEMENT A FLASHING UNDERLINE |
| CA33:25 4F | 60 | AND RNDH ; FOR A CURSOR |
| CA35:D0 10 | 61 | BNE TERMNEXT3 |
| CA37:A4 24 | 62 | LDY CH |
| CA39:A9 DF | 63 | LDA #\$DF |
| CA3B:D1 28 | 64 | CMP (BASL),Y ;IS UNDERLINE ON THE SCREEN? |
| CA3D:D0 02 | 65 | BNE TERMNEXT2 ;IF NOT, PUT IT THERE |
| CA3F:A5 27 | 66 | LDA CHARACTER ;OTHERWISE USE TRUE SCREEN CHAR |
| CA41:91 28 | 67 | TERMNEXT2 STA (BASL),Y |
| CA43:E6 4F | 68 | INC RNDH ;MAKE IT FLASH, BUT |
| CA45:E6 4F | 69 | INC RNDH ;NOT TOO SLOW AND NOT TOO FAST |
| CA47: | 70 | * |
| CA47:BD B8 04 | 71 | TERMNEXT3 LDA STATEFLG,X ;ARE WE STILL IN TERM MODE? |
| CA4A:30 09 | 72 | BMI TERMACIAIN ;IF SO, GO CHECK ACIA |
| CA4C: | 73 | * |
| CA4C:20 11 CC | 74 | TERMEXIT JSR RESTORE ;ALWAYS REPLACE OUR CURSOR |
| CA4F:68 | 75 | PLA ;CLEAN UP THE STACK |
| CA50:A9 8D | 76 | LDA #\$8D ;RETURN A <CR> TO COVER UP |
| CA52:85 27 | 77 | STA CHARACTER |
| CA54:60 | 78 | TERMRTS RTS |
| CA55: | 79 | * |
| CA55:20 FF CA | 80 | TERMACIAIN JSR INPUT ;ACIA INPUT? |
| CA58:90 0C | 81 | BCC TERMKBDIN ;IF NOT, GO CHECK KEYBOARD |
| CA5A:20 11 CC | 82 | JSR RESTORE ;RESTORE CURSOR, INPUT->CHARACTER |
| CA5D:20 D1 C9 | 83 | JSR CKINPUT ;CHECK FOR CTL-T, CTL-R |
| CA60:20 A3 CC | 84 | JSR SCREENOUT1 ;INPUT->SCREEN ALWAYS |
| CA63:4C 2B CA | 85 | JMP TERMNEXT ; |
| CA66: | 86 | * |
| CA66:20 3E CC | 87 | TERMKBDIN JSR GETKBD ;KEYPRESS? |
| CA69:90 C6 | 88 | BCC TERMNEXT1 ;SKIP IF NOT |
| CA6B:70 BE | 89 | BVS TERMNEXT ;BRANCH IF WE DID A KBD ESCAPE SEQ. |
| CA6D:BD 38 07 | 90 | LDA MISCFLG,X ;SHIFTING ENABLED? |
| CA70:0A | 91 | ASL A |
| CA71:10 22 | 92 | BPL TERMSEND1 |
| CA73:68 | 93 | PLA ;RECOVER TERMSTATE |
| CA74:A8 | 94 | TAY |
| CA75:A5 27 | 95 | LDA CHARACTER |
| CA77:C0 01 | 96 | CPY #1 ;1 = SHIFT LETTERS, XLATE NUMBERS |
| CA79:F0 20 | 97 | BEQ TERMCAP |
| CA7B:B0 34 | 98 | BCS TERMLock ;2 MEANS CAPS LOCK MODE |
| CA7D: | 99 | * |
| CA7D:C9 9B | 100 | TERMNORM CMP #\$9B ;ESC? |
| CA7F:D0 06 | 101 | BNE TERMLETTER |
| CA81: | 102 | * |
| CA81:C8 | 103 | TERMINC INY ;INCREMENT STATE |
| CA82:98 | 104 | TERMINC1 TYA |
| CA83:48 | 105 | PHA ;PUT BACK ON STACK |
| CA84:4C 2B CA | 106 | JMP TERMNEXT |
| CA87: | 107 | * |
| CA87:C9 C1 | 108 | TERMLETTER CMP #\$C1 ;<A? |
| CA89:90 08 | 109 | BCC TERMSEND |
| CA8B:C9 DB | 110 | CMP #\$DB ;>Z? |
| CA8D:B0 04 | 111 | BCS TERMSEND |
| CA8F:09 20 | 112 | ORA #\$20 ;IT'S A LETTER SO TRANSLATE TO LC |
| CA91:85 27 | 113 | STA CHARACTER |
| CA93: | 114 | * |
| CA93:98 | 115 | TERMSEND TYA |

| | | | | |
|---------------|-----|---|--|--------------------------|
| CA94:48 | 116 | PHA | | ;PUT STATE BACK ON STACK |
| CA95:20 68 CB | 117 | TERMSND1 JSR OUTPUT1 | | ;GO OUTPUT |
| CA98:4C 2B CA | 118 | JMP TERMNEXT | | |
| CA9B: | 119 | * | | |
| CA9B:C9 9B | 120 | TERMCAP CMP #9B | | ;TWO ESCAPES? |
| CA9D:F0 E2 | 121 | BEQ TERMINC | | |
| CA9F:C9 B0 | 122 | CMP #B0 | | ;<0? |
| CAA1:90 0A | 123 | BCC TERMCAP1 | | |
| CAA3:C9 BB | 124 | CMP #BB | | ;>COLON? |
| CAA5:B0 06 | 125 | BCS TERMCAP1 | | |
| CAA7: | 126 | * | | |
| CAA7: | 127 | * ESC <NUMBER> SO TRANSLATE INTO MISSING ASCII CHAR | | |
| CAA7: | 128 | * | | |
| CAA7:A8 | 129 | TAY | | |
| CAAB:B9 09 CA | 130 | LDA TRANSLATE-\$B0,Y | | |
| CAAB:85 27 | 131 | STA CHARACTER | | |
| CAAD:A0 00 | 132 | TERMCAP1 LDY #0 | | ;BACK TO STATE 0 |
| CAAF:F0 E2 | 133 | BEQ TERMSND | | ;<ALWAYS> |
| CAB1: | 134 | * | | |
| CAB1:C9 9B | 135 | TERMLCK CMP #9B | | ;ESC? |
| CAB3:D0 DE | 136 | BNE TERMSND | | |
| CAB5:A0 00 | 137 | LDY #0 | | |
| CAB7:F0 C9 | 138 | BEQ TERMINC1 | | ;<ALWAYS> |
| CAB9: | 139 | * | | |
| CAB9: | 140 | ***** | | |
| CAB9: | 141 | * TRANSLATE TABLE | | * |
| CAB9: | 142 | ***** | | |
| CAB9:9B | 143 | TRANSLATE DFB 9B | | ;ESC |
| CABA:9C | 144 | DFB 9C | | ;FS |
| CABB:9F | 145 | DFB 9F | | ;US |
| CABC:DB | 146 | DFB DB | | ;LEFT BRACKET |
| CABD:DC | 147 | DFB DC | | ;LEFT SLASH |
| CABE:DF | 148 | DFB DF | | ;UNDERSCORE |
| CABF:FB | 149 | DFB FB | | ;LEFT ENCLOSE |
| CAC0:FC | 150 | DFB FC | | ;VERTICAL BAR |
| CAC1:FD | 151 | DFB FD | | ;RIGHT ENCLOSE |
| CAC2:FE | 152 | DFB FE | | ;TILDE |
| CAC3:FF | 153 | DFB FF | | ;RUB |
| CAC4: | 154 | * | | |
| CAC4: | 155 | CHN SSC.CORE | | |

```

CAC4:      2 *****
CAC4:      3 *
CAC4:      4 * APPLE II SSC FIRMWARE
CAC4:      5 *
CAC4:      6 * BY LARRY KENYON
CAC4:      7 *
CAC4:      8 * -JANUARY 1981- *****
CAC4:      9 *
CAC4:     10 * (C) COPYRIGHT 1981 BY APPLE COMPUTER, INC. *
CAC4:     11 *
CAC4:     12 *****
CAC4:     13 *
CAC4:     14 * CORE SUBROUTINES
CAC4:     15 *
CAC4:     16 *****
CAC4:     17 *****
CAC4:     18 * GENERAL PURPOSE WAIT ROUTINE *
CAC4:     19 *****
CAC4:     20 *
CAC4:     21 * WAITMS WAITS FOR [A-REG] MILLISECONDS (256 IF A-REG=0)
CAC4:     22 *
CAC4:A2 CA 23 WAITMS LDX #202
CAC6:CA 24 WAITMS1 DEX ;<DON'T LET THIS LOOP CROSS A PAGE>
CAC7:D0 FD 25 BNE WAITMS1 ;5 MICROSECOND LOOP
CAC9:38 26 SEC
CACA:E9 01 27 SBC #01
CACC:D0 F6 28 BNE WAITMS
CACE:AE F8 07 29 LDX MSLOT
CAD1:60 30 RTS
CAD2: 31 *****
CAD2: 32 * ACIA STATUS REGISTER READ ROUTINES *
CAD2: 33 *****
CAD2: 34 *
CAD2: 35 * SRIN USED TO CHECK ACIA INPUT STATUS
CAD2: 36 *
CAD2:A4 26 37 SRIN LDY SLOT16 ;SLOT16=$N0
CAD4:B9 89 C0 38 LDA STREG,Y
CAD7:48 39 PHA
CAD8:29 20 40 AND #$20 ;DCD?
CADA:4A 41 LSR A ;AN ERROR IF NOT
CADB:4A 42 LSR A
CADC:85 35 43 STA ZPTMP
CADE:68 44 PLA
CADF:29 0F 45 AND #$0F
CAE1:C9 08 46 CMP #$08 ;SET CARRY IF RDR FULL, ELSE CLEAR
CAE3:90 04 47 BCC SRIN1
CAE5:29 07 48 AND #$07 ;PE, FE, OVR VALID ONLY WHEN RDR=1
CAE7:B0 02 49 BCS SRIN2 ;<ALWAYS>
CAE9:A5 35 50 SRIN1 LDA ZPTMP
CAEB:05 35 51 SRIN2 ORA ZPTMP ;GET DCD ERROR BIT
CAED:F0 05 52 BEQ SRIN3 ;BRANCH IF NO ERRORS FOUND
CAEF:09 20 53 ORA #$20 ;ELSE SET BIT 5 TO OFFSET FOR PASCAL
CAF1:9D B8 05 54 STA STSBYTE,X ;AND SAVE IN STATUS TEMP
CAF4:60 55 SRIN3 RTS ;CY=1 MEANS DATA IS AVAILABLE
CAF5: 56 *
CAF5: 57 * SROUT CHECKS IF TDR IS EMPTY + HARDWARE HANDSHAKE IS OK
CAF5: 58 *
CAF5:A4 26 59 SROUT LDY SLOT16

```

```

CAF7:B9 89 C0 60 LDA STREG,Y
CAFA:29 70 61 AND #$70
CAFC:C9 10 62 CMP #$10 ;EQU IF TDR EMPTY, DCD, DSR, & CTS
CAFE:60 63 RTS
CAFF: 64 *
CAFF: 65 *****
CAFF: 66 * GENERAL INPUT ROUTINE *
CAFF: 67 *****
CAFF:20 D2 CA 68 INPUT JSR SRIN
CB02:90 15 69 BCC NOINPUT1
CB04: 70 *
CB04:B9 88 C0 71 LDA RDREG,Y ;GET THE ACIA INPUT
CB07:09 80 72 ORA #$80 ;SET HI BIT FOR BASIC
CB09:C9 8A 73 CMP #$8A ;LINEFEED?
CB0B:D0 09 74 BNE INPUT2
CB0D: 75 *
CB0D:A8 76 TAY
CB0E:BD 38 07 77 LDA MISCFLG,X ;SEE IF WE SHOULD EAT IT
CB11:29 20 78 AND #$20
CB13:D0 03 79 BNE NOINPUT ;IF SO, JUST KEEP IT A SECRET
CB15:98 80 TYA
CB16: 81 *
CB16:38 82 INPUT2 SEC ;INDICATE DATA
CB17:60 83 RTS
CB18: 84 *
CB18:18 85 NOINPUT CLC ;CARRY CLEAR FOR NO INPUT
CB19:60 86 NOINPUT1 RTS
CB1A: 87 *
CB1A: 88 *****
CB1A: 89 * GENERAL OUTPUT ROUTINE *
CB1A: 90 *****
CB1A: 91 *
CB1A: 92 * START OF COMMAND CHECK ROUTINE
CB1A: 93 *
CB1A:A4 26 94 CMDSEQCK LDY SLOT16
CB1C:B9 81 C0 95 LDA DIPSW1,Y
CB1F:4A 96 LSR A
CB20:B0 36 97 BCS NOCMD ;DON'T WORRY ABOUT CMD SEQ FOR SIC
CB22:BD B8 04 98 LDA STATEFLG,X
CB25:29 07 99 AND #$07 ;ARE WE IN A COMMAND SEQUENCE?
CB27:F0 05 100 BEQ ESCCHECK
CB29:20 FC CD 101 JSR CMDPROC ;IF SO, GOTO COMMAND CENTRAL
CB2C:38 102 SEC ;INDICATE COMMAND
CB2D:60 103 RTS
CB2E: 104 *
CB2E:A5 27 105 ESCCHECK LDA CHARACTER
CB30:29 7F 106 AND #$7F ;IGNORE HIGH BIT
CB32:DD 38 05 107 CMP CMDBYTE,X ;IS THIS BEGINNING OF A CMD SEQ?
CB35:D0 05 108 BNE XOFFCK
CB37:FE B8 04 109 INC STATEFLG,X ;START UP COMMAND MODES
CB3A:38 110 SEC ;INDICATE COMMAND
CB3B:60 111 RTS
CB3C: 112 *
CB3C:BD 38 07 113 XOFFCK LDA MISCFLG,X ;IS XON ENABLED?
CB3F:29 08 114 AND #$08
CB41:F0 15 115 BEQ NOCMD ;SKIP THIS IF NOT
CB43: 116 *
CB43:20 FF CA 117 JSR INPUT ;ANY INPUT?

```



```

CB46:90 10      118      BCC  NOCMD      ;IF NOT, GO OUTPUT
CB48:C9 93      119      CMP  #$93      ;IS IT AN XOFF?
CB4A:F0 0E      120      BEQ  XONWAIT   ;IF SO, GO WAIT FOR ANOTHER INPUT
CB4C:48         121      PHA
CB4D:BD 38 07   122      LDA  MISCFLG,X ;CIC MODE?
CB50:4A         123      LSR  A
CB51:4A         124      LSR  A
CB52:68         125      PLA
CB53:90 04      126      BCC  ANRTS
CB55:9D B8 06   127      STA  BUFBYTE,X ;IF SO, WE HAVE A BUFFER
CB58:18         128      NOCMD CLC      ;INDICATE NOT A CMD SEQ
CB59:60         129      ANRTS RTS
CB5A:         130      *
CB5A:20 AA C8   131      XONWAIT JSR  GETCHAR ;GET ACIA/KBD DATA
CB5D:C9 91      132      CMP  #$91      ;IS IT AN XON?
CB5F:D0 F9      133      BNE  XONWAIT   ;IF NOT, WAIT
CB61:18         134      CLC      ;OTHERWISE, INDICATE NOT A CMD SEQ
CB62:60         135      RTS      ; AND RETURN
CB63:         136      *****
CB63:         137      * NOW THE OUTPUT ROUTINE YOU'VE BEEN WAITING FOR *
CB63:         138      *****
CB63:20 1A CB   139      OUTPUT JSR  CMDSEQCK
CB66:B0 F1      140      BCS  ANRTS      ;DON'T OUTPUT COMMAND SEQUENCES
CB6B:         141      *
CB6B:20 9E CC   142      OUTPUT1 JSR  SCREENOUT
CB6B:         143      *
CB6B:A4 26      144      OUTPUT2 LDY  SLOT16
CB6D:B9 81 CO   145      LDA  DIPSW1,Y
CB70:4A         146      LSR  A
CB71:90 4E      147      BCC  OUTPUT3 ;SKIP ETX/ACK FOR NATIVE MODES
CB73:4A         148      LSR  A
CB74:90 4B      149      BCC  OUTPUT3 ;BRANCH IF NOT P8A EMULATION
CB76:         150      *
CB76:         151      *****
CB76:         152      * P8A ETX/ACK STUFF*
CB76:         153      *****
CB76:         154      * AFTER 148 CHARACTERS BUT NOT WITHIN AN ESCAPE SEQUENCE
CB76:         155      * OF UP TO 5 CHARACTERS, THE HANDSHAKE IS PERFORMED
CB76:         156      * (WILL DELAY UNTIL 'NOT ESC' AND THEN 4 MORE CHARS
CB76:         157      * OR UNTIL AN 'ESC')
CB76:         158      *
CB76:A5 27      159      P8AOUT1 LDA  CHARACTER ;SAVE CHAR ON STACK
CB78:48         160      PHA
CB79:BD 38 04   161      LDA  HANDSHKE,X ;CHAR COUNT FOR BUFFER FULL
CB7C:C9 67      162      CMP  #103      ;IF <103 THEN 153 CHARS IN BUFFER
CB7E:90 10      163      BCC  ETX
CB80:C9 6C      164      CMP  #108      ;IF >=108 THEN LESS THAN 149 CHARS
CB82:B0 22      165      BCS  P8AOUT2 ; SO NO HANDSHAKE IS NEEDED YET
CB84:C9 6B      166      CMP  #107      ;SETS CARRY IF 107 (149 SENT)
CB86:68         167      PLA
CB87:48         168      PHA
CB88:49 9B      169      EOR  #$9B      ;ESC?
CB8A:29 7F      170      AND  #$7F      ;IGNORE HI-BIT
CB8C:D0 18      171      BNE  P8AOUT2 ;COUNT AS 1 OF 5 IF NOT 'ESC'
CB8E:B0 19      172      BCS  P8AOUT3 ;DON'T COUNT IF 149TH CHAR IS 'ESC'
CB90:         173      *
CB90:BD B8 04   174      ETX      LDA  STATEFLG,X ;SEND QUERY CHAR TO PRINTER
CB93:29 1F      175      AND  #$1F      ;(DEFAULT IS ETX)

```

```

CB95:09 80 176 ORA #$80
CB97:85 27 177 STA CHARACTER
CB99:20 02 CC 178 JSR ACIAOUT
CB9C:20 AA C8 179 ACK JSR GETCHAR ;GET ACIA/KBD DATA
CB9F:49 86 180 EOR #$86 ;ACK?
CBA1:D0 ED 181 BNE ETX ;IF NOT ACK, REPEAT HANDSHAKE
CBA3:9D 38 04 182 STA HANDSHKE,X ;INIT CHAR COUNT TO 255
CBA6: 183 *
CBA6:DE 38 04 184 P8AOUT2 DEC HANDSHKE,X
CBA9:68 185 P8AOUT3 PLA ;GET REAL CHAR TO OUTPUT
CBAA:85 27 186 STA CHARACTER
CBAC:49 8D 187 EOR #$8D ;IF CR AND CR DELAY MODE
CBAE:0A 188 ASL A
CBAF:D0 0A 189 BNE P8AOUT4 ; THEN FAKE CHAR COUNT TO LESS THAN
CBB1:BD B8 03 190 LDA DELAYFLG,X ; 48 TO FORCE HANDSHAKE ON NEXT
CBB4:29 30 191 AND #$30 ; CHARACTER OUT
CBB6:F0 03 192 BEQ P8AOUT4
CBB8:9D 38 04 193 STA HANDSHKE,X
CBBB: 194 *
CBBB:20 02 CC 195 P8AOUT4 JSR ACIAOUT
CBBE:4C EA CB 196 JMP LFGEN ;(SKIP DELAYS)
CBC1: 197 *****
CBC1: 198 * AND BACK TO NORMAL OUTPUT *
CBC1: 199 *****
CBC1:20 02 CC 200 OUTPUT3 JSR ACIAOUT ;OUTPUT THE CHARACTER
CBC4: 201 *
CBC4: 202 * NOW CHECK FOR CR, LF, AND FF DELAYS
CBC4: 203 *
CBC4:0A 204 ASL A
CBC5:A8 205 TAY
CBC6:BD B8 03 206 LDA DELAYFLG,X ;GET DELAY FLAGS
CBC9:C0 18 207 CPY #$18 ;FORM FEED?
CBCB:F0 0C 208 BEQ OUTDLY1
CBCD:4A 209 LSR A
CBCE:4A 210 LSR A ;RIGHT JUSTIFY LF DELAY
CBCF:C0 14 211 CPY #$14 ;LINE FEED?
CBD1:F0 06 212 BEQ OUTDLY1
CBD3:4A 213 LSR A
CBD4:4A 214 LSR A ;RIGHT JUSTIFY CR DELAY
CBD5:C0 1A 215 CPY #$1A ;CARRIAGE RETURN?
CBD7:D0 25 216 BNE OUTPUTEND
CBD9:29 03 217 OUTDLY1 AND #$03 ;JUST WANT LOWEST 2 BITS
CBDB:F0 0D 218 BEQ LFGEN ;NO DELAY INDICATED
CBDD:A8 219 TAY
CBDE:B9 FE CB 220 LDA DLYTBL-1,Y
CBE1:A8 221 TAY ;DELAY IN 32 MSEC INCREMENTS
CBE2:A9 20 222 OUTDLYLP LDA #32 ;
CBE4:20 C4 CA 223 JSR WAITMS
CBE7:88 224 DEY
CBEB:D0 F8 225 BNE OUTDLYLP
CBEA: 226 *
CBEA: 227 * CHECK ON LF GENERATION OPTION
CBEA: 228 *
CBEA:A5 27 229 LFGEN LDA CHARACTER
CBEC:0A 230 ASL A
CBED:C9 1A 231 CMP #$1A ;CARRIAGE RETURN?
CBEF:D0 0D 232 BNE OUTPUTEND
CBF1:BD 38 07 233 LDA MISCFLG,X ;IS LF GENERATE ENABLED?

```

| | | | | |
|---------------|-----|-----------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------|
| CBF4:6A | 234 | ROR | A | |
| CBF5:90 07 | 235 | BCC | OUTPUTEND | |
| CBF7:A9 8A | 236 | LDA | #\$8A | |
| CBF9:85 27 | 237 | STA | CHARACTER | ;LINE FEED |
| CBFB:4C 6B CB | 238 | JMP | OUTPUT2 | ;(DON'T ECHO IT) |
| CBFE:60 | 239 | OUTPUTEND | RTS | |
| CBFF: | 240 | * | | |
| CBFF:01 | 241 | DLYTBL | DFB \$01 | ;32 MSEC |
| CC00:08 | 242 | DFB | \$08 | ;1/4 SEC |
| CC01:40 | 243 | DFB | \$40 | ; 2 SEC |
| CC02: | 244 | ***** | | |
| CC02: | 245 | * ACIA OUTPUT ROUTINE | * | |
| CC02: | 246 | ***** | | |
| CC02:20 F5 CA | 247 | ACIAOUT JSR | SROUT | ;READY FOR OUTPUT? |
| CC05:D0 FB | 248 | BNE | ACIAOUT | |
| CC07:98 | 249 | TYA | | |
| CC08:09 89 | 250 | ORA | #\$89 | ;PREPARE TO ADDRESS ACIA, |
| CC0A:A8 | 251 | TAY | | ; CAUSING 6502 FALSE READ TO OCCUR |
| CC0B:A5 27 | 252 | LDA | CHARACTER | ; ON PAGE \$BF (AVOIDING RDR READ) |
| CC0D:99 FF BF | 253 | STA | \$BFFF,Y | ;HERE YOU ARE ACIA |
| CC10:60 | 254 | RTS | | |
| CC11: | 255 | * | | |
| CC11: | 256 | ***** | | |
| CC11: | 257 | * RESTORE CURSOR (NOT FOR PASCAL) | * | |
| CC11: | 258 | * (A-REG SHOULD CONTAIN NEW CHAR) | * | |
| CC11: | 259 | ***** | | |
| CC11:48 | 260 | RESTORE PHA | | ;SAVE NEW CHARACTER |
| CC12:A4 24 | 261 | LDY | CH | |
| CC14:A5 27 | 262 | LDA | CHARACTER | ;OLD CHARACTER |
| CC16:91 28 | 263 | STA | (BASL),Y | |
| CC18:68 | 264 | PLA | | |
| CC19: | 265 | * | | |
| CC19:C9 95 | 266 | CMP | #\$95 | ;SCREEN PICK? |
| CC1B:D0 0C | 267 | BNE | RESTOREND | |
| CC1D:A5 27 | 268 | LDA | CHARACTER | ;IF SO, USE SCREEN CHAR |
| CC1F:C9 20 | 269 | CMP | #\$20 | ;INVERSE? |
| CC21:B0 06 | 270 | BCS | RESTOREND | |
| CC23:20 DF CC | 271 | JSR | GETXLATE | ;REVERSE THE TRANSLATION |
| CC26:59 DB CC | 272 | EOR | REVMASK,Y | |
| CC29:85 27 | 273 | RESTOREND | STA CHARACTER | |
| CC2B:60 | 274 | RTS | | |
| CC2C: | 275 | * | | |
| CC2C: | 276 | CHN | SSC.UTIL | |


```

CC2C:      2 *****
CC2C:      3 *
CC2C:      4 * APPLE II SSC FIRMWARE *
CC2C:      5 *
CC2C:      6 * BY LARRY KENYON *
CC2C:      7 *
CC2C:      8 * -JANUARY 1981- *****
CC2C:      9 *
CC2C:     10 * (C) COPYRIGHT 1981 BY APPLE COMPUTER, INC. *
CC2C:     11 *
CC2C:     12 *****
CC2C:     13 *
CC2C:     14 * UTILITY ROUTINES *
CC2C:     15 *
CC2C:     16 *****
CC2C:     17 * PASCAL-BASIC KEYBOARD FETCH *
CC2C:     18 *****
CC2C:18 19 CKKBD CLC ;RETURN CARRY CLEAR FOR NO DATA
CC2D:BD 38 07 20 LDA MISCFLG,X
CC30:29 04 21 AND #$04 ;ANSWER NO IF KEYBOARD IS DISABLED
CC32:FO 09 22 BEQ CKKBDXIT
CC34: 23 *
CC34:AD 00 C0 24 CKKBD1 LDA KBD
CC37:10 04 25 BPL CKKBDXIT
CC39:8D 10 C0 26 STA KBDSTRB
CC3C:38 27 SEC ;INDICATE DATA
CC3D:60 28 CKKBDXIT RTS
CC3E: 29 *****
CC3E: 30 * GET A CHAR FROM KEYBOARD FOR BASIC ONLY *
CC3E: 31 *****
CC3E:E6 4E 32 GETKBD INC RNDL ;MIX UP RANDOM # SEED
CC40:D0 02 33 BNE GETKBD1 ; FOR BASIC
CC42:E6 4F 34 INC RNDH
CC44:20 2C CC 35 GETKBD1 JSR CKKBD ;KEYBOARD FETCH ROUTINE
CC47:B8 36 CLV ;INDICATE NO ESCAPE SEQUENCE
CC48:90 F3 37 BCC CKKBDXIT ;EXIT IF NO KEY PRESS
CC4A:20 11 CC 38 JSR RESTORE ;DO BASIC CURSED DUTY
CC4D:29 7F 39 AND #$7F
CC4F:DD 38 05 40 CMP CMDBYTE,X ;IS IT THE START OF A COMMAND?
CC52:D0 3D 41 BNE GETKBDONE ;IF NOT, EXIT INDICATING DATA
CC54:A4 26 42 LDY SLOT16
CC56:B9 81 C0 43 LDA DIPSW1,Y ;ONLY DO CMD ESC FOR PPC, SIC MODES
CC59:4A 44 LSR A
CC5A:B0 35 45 BCS GETKBDONE
CC5C: 46 *****
CC5C: 47 * KEYBOARD ESCAPE HANDLER *
CC5C: 48 *****
CC5C:A0 0A 49 KBDESC LDY #$A ;FIRST PRINT A PROMPT
CC5E:B9 93 CC 50 PROMPTLOOP LDA PROMPTBL,Y
CC61:85 27 51 STA CHARACTER
CC63:98 52 TYA
CC64:48 53 PHA
CC65:20 A3 CC 54 JSR SCREENOUT1 ;ALWAYS SEND TO SCREEN
CC68:68 55 PLA
CC69:A8 56 TAY
CC6A:88 57 DEY
CC6B:10 F1 58 BPL PROMPTLOOP
CC6D: 59 *

```

```

CC6D:A9 01      60      LDA #1 ;START OUT IN COMMAND STATE 1
CC6F:20 7B CE   61      JSR SETOSTATE
CC72:           62 *
CC72:20 34 CC   63 GETCMD JSR CKKBD1 ;WAIT FOR KEYBOARD CHARACTER
CC75:10 FB      64      BPL GETCMD
CC77:C9 88      65      CMP #$88 ;BACKSPACE?
CC79:F0 E1      66      BEQ KBDESC ;IF SO, THEN START OVER
CC7B:85 27      67      STA CHARACTER
CC7D:           68 *
CC7D:20 A3 CC   69      JSR SCREENOUT1
CC80:20 1A CB   70      JSR CMDSEQCK ;PUMP THRU CMD INTERPRETER
CC83:           71 *
CC83:BD B8 04   72      LDA STATEFLG,X ;ARE WE DONE?
CC86:29 07      73      AND #$07
CC88:D0 E8      74      BNE GETCMD ;IF NOT, GO AGAIN
CC8A:           75 *
CC8A:A9 8D      76      LDA #$8D ;FORCE BACK A CARRIAGE RETURN
CC8C:85 27      77      STA CHARACTER
CC8E:2C 58 FF   78      BIT IORTS ;INDICATE THAT A CMD SEQ HAS OCCURRED
CC91:38         79 GETKBDONE SEC ;INDICATE SUCCESS
CC92:60         80      RTS
CC93:           81 *
CC93:           82 *
CC93:BA C3 D3   83 PROMPTBL ASC ":CSS ELPPA"
CC96:D3 A0 C5
CC99:CC D0 D0
CC9C:C1
CC9D:8D         84      DFB $8D
CC9E:           85 *
CC9E:           86 *****
CC9E:           87 * ROUTINE TO PRINT A CHARACTER ON THE CURRENT DISPLAY *
CC9E:           88 *****
CC9E:BD 38 07   89 SCREENOUT LDA MISCFLG,X
CCA1:10 13      90      BPL NOOUT ;IF SCREEN DISABLED
CCA3:           91 *
CCA3:BD 38 07   92 SCREENOUT1 LDA MISCFLG,X ;ENTRY AFTER ECHO CHECK
CCA6:29 02      93      AND #$02 ;IF IT ISN'T CIC MODE,
CCA8:F0 0D      94      BEQ ASCREEN ;ALWAYS USE THE APPLE SCREEN
CCAA:BD B8 04   95      LDA STATEFLG,X ;CURRENT SCREEN = APPLE SCREEN?
CCAD:29 38      96      AND #$38
CCAF:F0 06      97      BEQ ASCREEN ;SLOT 0= APPLE SCREEN
CCB1:           98 *
CCB1:8A         99      TXA ;JUMP TO CN00 SPACE
CCB2:48        100     PHA
CCB3:A9 AF     101     LDA #>SENDCCD-1 ; TO VECTOR TO THE PERIPHERAL
CCB5:48        102     PHA ; IN THE CHAIN SLOT
CCB6:60        103     NOOUT RTS
CCB7:           104 *
CCB7:           105 * APPLE 40-COL SCREEN DRIVER
CCB7:           106 *
CCB7:20 DF CC   107 ASCREEN JSR GETXLATE ;GET THE TRANSLATE OPTIONS
CCBA:09 80      108     ORA #$80 ;SET HIGH BIT OF CHAR
CCBC:C9 E0      109     CMP #$E0 ;LOWERCASE?
CCBE:90 06      110     BCC TESTLETTER
CCC0:59 D3 CC   111     EOR LCMASK,Y ;DO LOWERCASE TRIP
CCC3:4C F6 FD   112 TOSCREEN JMP VIOOUT ;ALL REGS ARE PRESERVED
CCC6:           113 *
CCC6:           114 * IF UPPERCASE, WE ONLY MAP LETTERS

```

```

CCC6:          115 *
CCC6:C9 C1    116 TESTLETTER CMP #$C1      ;<A?
CCC8:90 F9    117          BCC  TOSCREEN
CCCA:C9 DB    118          CMP  #$DB        ;>Z?
CCCC:B0 F5    119          BCS  TOSCREEN
CCCE:59 D7 CC 120          EOR  UCMASK,Y
CCD1:90 F0    121          BCC  TOSCREEN  ;<ALWAYS>
CCD3:          122 *
CCD3:          123 * MASKS FOR CASE TRANSLATION
CCD3:20 00 E0 124 LCMASK  DFB  $20,$00,$E0,$20
CCD6:20
CCD7:00 00 00 125 UCMASK  DFB  $00,$00,$00,$C0
CCDA:C0
CCDB:00 00 E0 126 REVMASK DFB  $00,$00,$E0,$C0
CCDE:C0
CCDF:          127 *
CCDF:BD B8 03 128 GETXLATE LDA  DELAYFLG,X ;TRANSLATE OPTIONS IN B6-B7
CCE2:2A          129          ROL  A
CCE3:2A          130          ROL  A
CCE4:2A          131          ROL  A
CCE5:29 03      132          AND  #$03
CCE7:A8          133          TAY
CCE8:A5 27      134          LDA  CHARACTER
CCEA:60          135          RTS
CCEB:          136 *

```

(listings continued on next page)


```

CCEB:      138      CHN  SSC.CMD
CCEB:      1 *****
CCEB:      2 *
CCEB:      3 * APPLE II SSC FIRMWARE
CCEB:      4 *
CCEB:      5 * BY LARRY KENYON
CCEB:      6 *
CCEB:      7 * -JANUARY 1981- *****
CCEB:      8 *
CCEB:      9 * (C) COPYRIGHT 1981 BY APPLE COMPUTER, INC. *
CCEB:     10 *
CCEB:     11 *****
CCEB:     12 *
CCEB:     13 * SSC COMMAND PROCESSOR
CCEB:     14 *
CCEB:     15 *****
CCEB:     16 *****
CCEB:     17 * COMMAND TABLE (USED BY COMMAND PROCESSOR ROUTINE *
CCEB:     18 *****
CCEB:42 19 CMDTBL DFB $42 ;B(REAK)
CCEC:67 20 DFB $67 ;CIC PAS NS=7
CCED:C0 21 DFB >BREAKCMD-1
CCEE:54 22 DFB $54 ;T(ERMINAL)
CCEF:47 23 DFB $47 ;CIC NS=7
CCFO:A6 24 DFB >TERMCMD-1
CCF1:43 25 DFB $43 ;C(R GENERATE)
CCF2:87 26 DFB $87 ; PPC NS=7
CCF3:A6 27 DFB >TERMCMD-1
CCF4:51 28 DFB $51 ;Q(UIT)
CCF5:47 29 DFB $47 ;CIC NS=7
CCF6:B8 30 DFB >QUITCMD-1
CCF7:52 31 DFB $52 ;R(ESET)
CCF8:C7 32 DFB $C7 ;CIC PPC NS=7
CCF9:AC 33 DFB >RESETCMD-1
CCFA:5A 34 DFB $5A ;Z COMMAND
CCFB:E7 35 DFB $E7 ;CIC PPC PAS NS=7
CCFC:F3 36 DFB >ZCMD-1
CCFD:49 37 DFB $49 ;I COMMAND
CCFE:90 38 DFB $90 ; PPC NS=0
CCFF:D3 39 DFB >ICMD-1
CD00:4B 40 DFB $4B ;K COMMAND
CD01:90 41 DFB $90 ; PPC NS=0
CD02:DF 42 DFB >KCMD-1
CD03: 43 *
CD03:45 44 DFB $45 ;E(CHO)
CD04:43 45 DFB $43 ;CIC NS=3
CD05:80 46 DFB $80
CD06:46 47 DFB $46 ;F(ROMKYBD)
CD07:E3 48 DFB $E3 ;CIC PPC PAS NS=3
CD08:04 49 DFB $04
CD09:4C 50 DFB $4C ;L(F GENERATE)
CD0A:E3 51 DFB $E3 ;CIC PPC PAS NS=3
CD0B:01 52 DFB $01
CD0C:58 53 DFB $58 ;X(OFF)
CD0D:E3 54 DFB $E3 ;CIC PPC PAS NS=3
CD0E:08 55 DFB $08
CD0F:54 56 DFB $54 ;T(ABBING)
CD10:83 57 DFB $83 ; PPC NS=3

```

| | | | | | |
|------------|------|----------------------|--------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| CD11:40 | 58 | DFB | \$40 | | |
| CD12:53 | 59 | DFB | \$53 | ;S(HIFTING) | |
| CD13:43 | 60 | DFB | \$43 | ;CIC | NS=3 |
| CD14:40 | 61 | DFB | \$40 | | |
| CD15:4D | 62 | DFB | \$4D | ;M(UNCH LP) | |
| CD16:E3 | 63 | DFB | \$E3 | ;CIC PPC PAS | NS=3 |
| CD17:20 | 64 | DFB | \$20 | | |
| CD18: | 65 * | | | | |
| CD18:00 | 66 | DFB | \$0C | ;END OF FIRST PART MARKER | |
| CD19: | 67 * | | | | |
| CD19:42 | 68 | CMDTBL1 | DFB | \$42 | ;B(AUD) |
| CD1A:F6 | 69 | DFB | \$F6 | ;CIC PPC PAS | NS=6 |
| CD1B:7C | 70 | DFB | >BAUDCMD-1 | | |
| CD1C:50 | 71 | DFB | \$50 | ;P(ARITY) | |
| CD1D:F6 | 72 | DFB | \$F6 | ;CIC PPC PAS | NS=6 |
| CD1E:9A | 73 | DFB | >PARITYCMD-1 | | |
| CD1F:44 | 74 | DFB | \$44 | ;D(ATA) | |
| CD20:F6 | 75 | DFB | \$F6 | ;CIC PPC PAS | NS=6 |
| CD21:9B | 76 | DFB | >DATACMD-1 | | |
| CD22:46 | 77 | DFB | \$46 | ;F(F DELAY) | |
| CD23:F6 | 78 | DFB | \$F6 | ;CIC PPC PAS | NS=6 |
| CD24:46 | 79 | DFB | >FFCMD-1 | | |
| CD25:4C | 80 | DFB | \$4C | ;L(F DELAY) | |
| CD26:F6 | 81 | DFB | \$F6 | ;CIC PPC PAS | NS=6 |
| CD27:40 | 82 | DFB | >LFCMD-1 | | |
| CD28:43 | 83 | DFB | \$43 | ;C(R DELAY) | |
| CD29:F6 | 84 | DFB | \$F6 | ;CIC PPC PAS | NS=6 |
| CD2A:3A | 85 | DFB | >CRCMD-1 | | |
| CD2B:54 | 86 | DFB | \$54 | ;T(RANSLATE) | |
| CD2C:D6 | 87 | DFB | \$D6 | ;CIC PPC | NS=6 |
| CD2D:34 | 88 | DFB | >TRANCMD-1 | | |
| CD2E:4E | 89 | DFB | \$4E | ;N COMMAND | |
| CD2F:90 | 90 | DFB | \$90 | ; PPC | NS=0 |
| CD30:E8 | 91 | DFB | >NCMD-1 | | |
| CD31:53 | 92 | DFB | \$53 | ;S(CREENSLOT) | |
| CD32:56 | 93 | DFB | \$56 | ;CIC | NS=6 |
| CD33:60 | 94 | DFB | >SSLOTCMD-1 | | |
| CD34: | 95 * | | | | |
| CD34:00 | 96 | DFB | \$00 | ;END OF TABLE MARKER | |
| CD35: | 97 * | | | | |
| CD35: | 98 | ***** | | | |
| CD35: | 99 | * COMMAND ROUTINES | * | | |
| CD35: | 100 | * (CALLED BY PARSER) | * | | |
| CD35: | 101 | * (MUST START IN | * | | |
| CD35: | 102 | * PAGE \$CD . . .) | * | | |
| CD35: | 103 | ***** | | | |
| CD35:A9 3F | 104 | TRANCMD | LDA | #\$3F | ;SET SCREEN TRANSLATE OPTIONS |
| CD37:A0 07 | 105 | | LDY | #\$7 | |
| CD39:D0 10 | 106 | | BNE | DELAYSET | ; <ALWAYS> |
| CD3B:A9 CF | 107 | CRCMD | LDA | #\$CF | ;SET CR DELAY |
| CD3D:A0 05 | 108 | | LDY | #\$5 | |
| CD3F:D0 0A | 109 | | BNE | DELAYSET | ; <ALWAYS> |
| CD41: | 110 | * | | | |
| CD41:A9 F3 | 111 | LFCMD | LDA | #\$F3 | ;SET LF DELAY |
| CD43:A0 03 | 112 | | LDY | #\$3 | |
| CD45:D0 04 | 113 | | BNE | DELAYSET | ; <ALWAYS> |
| CD47: | 114 | * | | | |
| CD47:A9 FC | 115 | FFCMD | LDA | #\$FC | ;SET FF DELAY |

```

CD49:A0 01      116      LDY  #$1
CD4B:3D B8 03   117 DELAYSET AND DELAYFLG,X ;DON'T DISTURB THE OTHER FLAGS
CD4E:85 2A      118      STA  ZPTMP1
CD50:BD 38 04   119      LDA  PARAMETER,X
CD53:29 03      120      AND  #$03      ;JUST USE TWO BITS
CD55:18         121      CLC
CD56:6A         122      ROR  A          ;ONCE FOR FUN
CD57:2A         123 ROTATE ROL  A          ;CHANGE DIRECTIONS
CD58:88         124      DEY
CD59:D0 FC      125      BNE  ROTATE      ;PREPARE IT TO OR INTO THE FLAGS
CD5B:           126 *
CD5B:05 2A      127      ORA  ZPTMP1
CD5D:9D B8 03   128      STA  DELAYFLG,X
CD60:60         129      RTS
CD61:           130 *
CD61:29 07      131 SSLOTCMD AND  #$7      ;SET SLOT COMMAND
CD63:0A         132      ASL  A
CD64:0A         133      ASL  A
CD65:0A         134      ASL  A
CD66:85 2A      135      STA  ZPTMP1
CD68:0A         136      ASL  A
CD69:C5 26      137      CMP  SLOT16      ;MAKE SURE WE DON'T SET IT
CD6B:F0 0F      138      BEQ  SSLOTCMD1 ; TO OUR OWN SLOT
CD6D:BD B8 04   139      LDA  STATEFLG,X
CD70:29 C7      140      AND  #$C7      ;PUT NEW SLOT NUMBER IN BITS 3-5
CD72:05 2A      141      ORA  ZPTMP1      ; OF CMDBYTE,X
CD74:9D B8 04   142      STA  STATEFLG,X
CD77:A9 00      143      LDA  #0          ;STORE ZERO INTO
CD79:9D 38 06   144      STA  CHNBYTE,X ;SLOT OFFSET (SET TO CN00 ENTRY)
CD7C:60         145 SSLOTCMD1 RTS
CD7D:           146 *
CD7D:29 0F      147 BAUDCMD AND  #$0F      ;SET NEW BAUD RATE
CD7F:D0 07      148      BNE  BAUDCMD2
CD81:B9 81 C0   149 BAUDCMD1 LDA  DIPSW1,Y ;ZERO PARM = RELOAD FROM SWITCHES
CD84:4A         150      LSR  A
CD85:4A         151      LSR  A
CD86:4A         152      LSR  A
CD87:4A         153      LSR  A
CD88:09 10      154 BAUDCMD2 ORA  #$10      ;SET INT. BAUD RATE GENERATOR
CD8A:85 2A      155      STA  ZPTMP1
CD8C:A9 E0      156      LDA  #$E0
CD8E:85 2B      157 CTLREGSET STA ZPTMP2
CD90:B9 8B C0   158      LDA  CTLREG,Y
CD93:25 2B      159      AND  ZPTMP2
CD95:05 2A      160      ORA  ZPTMP1
CD97:99 8B C0   161      STA  CTLREG,Y
CD9A:60         162      RTS
CD9B:           163 *
CD9B:88         164 PARITYCMD DEY      ;TRICK: SO CTLREG,Y ACTUALLY
CD9C:           165 *      ADDRESSES THE COMMAND REG
CD9C:           166 *
CD9C:0A         167 DATACMD ASL  A      ;SET NEW # OF DATA BITS
CD9D:0A         168      ASL  A
CD9E:0A         169      ASL  A
CD9F:0A         170      ASL  A
CDA0:0A         171      ASL  A
CDA1:85 2A      172 DATACMD1 STA ZPTMP1
CDA3:A9 1F      173      LDA  #$1F

```



```

CDA5:D0 E7      174      BNE  CTLREGSET ;<ALWAYS>
CDA7:           175 *
CDA7:1E B8 04   176  TERMCMD ASL  STATEFLG,X ;SET TERMINAL MODE
CDAA:38         177      SEC
CDAB:B0 10      178      BCS  QCMD1      ;<ALWAYS>
CDAD:           179 *
CDAD:99 89 C0   180  RESETCMD STA  RESET,Y      ;DROP RTS, DTR
CDB0:20 93 FE   181      JSR  SETSCR      ;PR#0
CDB3:20 89 FE   182      JSR  SETKBD      ;IN#0
CDB6:AE F8 07   183      LDX  MSLOT
CDB9:1E B8 04   184  QUITCMD ASL  STATEFLG,X ;CLEAR TERMINAL MODE
CDBC:18         185      CLC
CDBD:7E B8 04   186  QCMD1  ROR  STATEFLG,X
CDC0:60         187      RTS
CDC1:           188 *
CDC1:B9 8A C0   189  BREAKCMD LDA  CMDREG,Y      ;SEND BREAK SIGNAL
CDC4:48         190      PHA              ; FOR 233 MILLISECONDS
CDC5:09 0C      191      ORA  #$0C
CDC7:99 8A C0   192      STA  CMDREG,Y
CDCA:A9 E9      193      LDA  #233      ;DELAY FOR 233 MICROSEC.
CDCC:20 C4 CA   194      JSR  WAITMS
CDCF:68         195      PLA              ;RESTORE OLD COMMAND REG CONTENTS
CDD0:99 8A C0   196      STA  CMDREG,Y
CDD3:60         197      RTS
CDD4:           198 *
CDD4:A9 28      199  ICMD   LDA  #$28
CDD6:9D 38 06   200      STA  PWDBYTE,X ;SET PRINTER WIDTH TO 40
CDD9:A9 80      201      LDA  #$80
CDDB:1D 38 07   202      ORA  MISCFLG,X ;SET SCREEN ECHO
CDDE:D0 05      203      BNE  KCMD2      ;<ALWAYS>
CDE0:           204 *
CDE0:A9 FE      205  KCMD   LDA  #$FE      ;RESET THE LF GENERATE FLAG
CDE2:3D 38 07   206  KCMD1  AND  MISCFLG,X
CDE5:9D 38 07   207  KCMD2  STA  MISCFLG,X
CDE8:60         208      RTS
CDE9:           209 *
CDE9:C9 28      210  NCMD   CMP  #40      ;>=40?
CDEB:90 0E      211      BCC  ZCMDRTS    ;IF NOT, JUST EXIT
CDED:9D 38 06   212      STA  PWDBYTE,X ;SET NEW PRINTER WIDTH
CDF0:A9 3F      213      LDA  #$3F      ;DISABLE SCREEN, SET LISTING MODE
CDF2:D0 EE      214      BNE  KCMD1      ;<ALWAYS>
CDF4:           215 *
CDF4:1E 38 05   216  ZCMD   ASL  CMDBYTE,X ;DISABLE COMMAND RECOGNITION
CDF7:38         217      SEC
CDF8:7E 38 05   218      ROR  CMDBYTE,X
CDFB:60         219  ZCMDRTS RTS
CDFC:           220 *
CDFC:           221 *****
CDFC:           222 * VECTOR ACCORDING TO COMMAND STATE *
CDFC:           223 *****
CDFC:A8         224  CMDPROC TAY              ;A-REG=COMMAND STATE
CDFD:A5 27      225      LDA  CHARACTER
CDFF:29 7F      226      AND  #$7F
CE01:           227 *
CE01:C9 20      228      CMP  #$20      ;SKIP SPACES FOR ALL MODES
CE03:D0 09      229      BNE  CMDPROC2
CE05:C0 03      230      CPY  #$3      ;EXCEPT MODE 3
CE07:F0 01      231      BEQ  CMDPROC1

```

```

CE09:60      232      RTS
CE0A:A9 04    233  CMDPROC1 LDA #S4
CE0C:D0 6D    234      BNE SETOSTATE ;<ALWAYS>
CE0E:        235 *
CE0E:C9 0D    236  CMDPROC2 CMP #S0D      ;CARRIAGE RETURN?
CE10:D0 12    237      BNE CMDPROC4      ;
CE12:20 79 CE 238      JSR ZEROSTATE ;ABORT FOR STATES 0-5, EXIT FOR 6,7
CE15:C0 07    239      CPY #S07      ;IN STATE 7 WE VECTOR TO THE PROC
CE17:F0 01    240      BEQ CMDPROC3      ;
CE19:60      241      RTS      ;OTHERWISE, JUST EXIT
CE1A:        242 *
CE1A:A9 CD    243  CMDPROC3 LDA #SCD      ;ALL PROCS MUST START IN PAGE $CD
CE1C:48      244      PHA
CE1D:BD 38 04 245      LDA PARAMETER,X
CE20:48      246      PHA
CE21:A4 26    247      LDY SLOT16      ;NEEDED BY BREAK CMD
CE23:60      248      RTS
CE24:        249 *
CE24:85 35    250  CMDPROC4 STA ZPTMP
CE26:A9 CE    251      LDA #SCE      ;ALL ROUTINES MUST START
CE28:48      252      PHA      ; IN PAGE $CE
CE29:B9 30 CE 253      LDA STATETBL,Y
CE2C:48      254      PHA
CE2D:A5 35    255      LDA ZPTMP
CE2F:60      256      RTS      ;RTS TO COMMAND PROCEDURE
CE30:        257 *
CE30:        258 * NOW THE STATE ROUTINES
CE30:        259 *
CE30:        260 *****
CE30:        261 * STATE BRANCH TABLE *
CE30:        262 *****
CE30:A7      263  STATETBL DFB >STATERR-1 ;BAD STATE
CE31:37      264      DFB >CSTATE1-1 ;<CMD> SEEN
CE32:61      265      DFB >CSTATE2-1 ;ACCUMULATE PARAMETER
CE33:89      266      DFB >CDONE-1 ;SKIP UNTIL SPACE
CE34:8A      267      DFB >CSTATE4-1 ;E/D SOMETHING
CE35:A7      268      DFB >STATERR-1 ;ILLEGAL STATE
CE36:89      269      DFB >CDONE-1 ;SKIP UNTIL CR
CE37:89      270      DFB >CDONE-1 ;SKIP UNTIL CR THEN DO CMD
CE38:        271 *****
CE38:        272 * COMMAND STATE 1 *
CE38:        273 *****
CE38:DD 38 05 274  CSTATE1 CMP CMDBYTE,X ;IS IT <CMD>?
CE3B:D0 06    275      BNE CSTATE1A
CE3D:DE B8 04 276      DEC STATEFLG,X ;SET STATE BACK TO ZERO
CE40:4C 02 CC 277      JMP ACIAOUT ;OUTPUT <CMD> IF SO
CE43:        278 *
CE43:C9 30    279  CSTATE1A CMP #S30      ;>=0?
CE45:90 0D    280      BCC CSTATE1B
CE47:C9 3A    281      CMP #S3A      ;<=9?
CE49:B0 09    282      BCS CSTATE1B
CE4B:29 0F    283      AND #S0F      ;IT'S A NUMBER
CE4D:9D 38 04 284      STA PARAMETER,X
CE50:A9 02    285      LDA #2
CE52:D0 27    286      BNE SETOSTATE ;<ALWAYS> SET MODE 2 AND RETURN
CE54:        287 *
CE54:C9 20    288  CSTATE1B CMP #S20      ;IS IT A CONTROL CHAR?
CE56:B0 06    289      BCS CSTATE1C

```

```

CE58:9D 38 05 290 STA CMDBYTE,X ;SET NEW COMMAND CHARACTER
CE5B:4C 79 CE 291 JMP ZEROSTATE ;RESET STATE TO ZERO
CE5E: 292 *
CE5E:A0 00 293 CSTATE1C LDY #0 ;USE COMMAND TABLE
CE60:F0 4D 294 BEQ CMDSEARCH ;<ALWAYS>
CE62: 295 *****
CE62: 296 * COMMAND STATE 2: ACCUMULATE PARAMETER *
CE62: 297 *****
CE62:49 30 298 CSTATE2 EOR #$30 ;CONVERT $30-$39 TO 0-9
CE64:C9 0A 299 CMP #$A ;0-9?
CE66:B0 0D 300 BCS CSTATE2A
CE68:A0 0A 301 LDY #$A ;IT'S A NUMBER, SO ADD
CE6A:7D 38 04 302 ACCLOOP ADC PARAMETER,X ; IT TO 10*PARAMETER
CE6D:88 303 DEY
CE6E:D0 FA 304 BNE ACCLOOP
CE70:9D 38 04 305 STA PARAMETER,X
CE73:F0 15 306 BEQ CDONE ;<ALWAYS>
CE75: 307 *
CE75:A0 2E 308 CSTATE2A LDY #CMDTBL1-CMDTBL ;USE COMMAND TABLE
CE77:D0 36 309 BNE CMDSEARCH ;<ALWAYS>
CE79: 310 *****
CE79: 311 * SET COMMAND STATE *
CE79: 312 *****
CE79:A9 00 313 ZEROSTATE LDA #0
CE7B:85 2A 314 SETOSTATE STA ZPTMP1
CE7D:AE F8 07 315 LDX MSLOT
CE80:BD B8 04 316 LDA STATEFLG,X
CE83:29 F8 317 AND #$F8
CE85:05 2A 318 ORA ZPTMP1
CE87:9D B8 04 319 STA STATEFLG,X
CE8A:60 320 CDONE RTS
CE8B: 321 *****
CE8B: 322 * COMMAND STATE 4 (E/D) *
CE8B: 323 *****
CE8B:A8 324 CSTATE4 TAY ;E/D -> Y-REG
CE8C:BD 38 04 325 LDA PARAMETER,X
CE8F:C0 44 326 CPY #$44 ;D(ISABLE)?
CE91:F0 09 327 BEQ CSTATE4A
CE93:C0 45 328 CPY #$45 ;E(NABLE)?
CE95:D0 11 329 BNE STATERR ;IF NOT, IGNORE THIS COMMAND
CE97:1D 38 07 330 ORA MISCFLG,X ;SET FLAG
CE9A:D0 05 331 BNE CSTATE4B ;<ALWAYS>
CE9C:49 FF 332 CSTATE4A EOR #$FF ;INVERT FOR DISABLE
CE9E:3D 38 07 333 AND MISCFLG,X ;RESET FLAG
CEA1:9D 38 07 334 CSTATE4B STA MISCFLG,X
CEA4: 335 *****
CEA4: 336 * ESCAPE TO STATE 6 *
CEA4: 337 *****
CEA4:A9 06 338 SETSTATE6 LDA #6
CEA6:D0 D3 339 BNE SETOSTATE ;<ALWAYS>
CEA8:A9 20 340 STATERR LDA #32 ;CODE FOR BAD COMMAND
CEAA:9D B8 05 341 STA STSBYTE,X
CEAD:D0 F5 342 BNE SETSTATE6 ;<ALWAYS>
CEAF: 343 *****
CEAF: 344 * TABLE DRIVEN COMMAND PROCESSOR *
CEAF: 345 *****
CEAF:B9 EB CC 346 CMDSEARCH LDA CMDTBL,Y ;GET CANDIDATE CHARACTER
CEB2:F0 F4 347 BEQ STATERR ;A ZERO MARKS THE END OF A SUBTABLE

```



```

CEB4:C5 35      348      CMP  ZPTMP      ;MATCH?
CEB6:F0 05      349      BEQ  CMDMATCH
CEB8:C8         350      INY
CEB9:C8         351  CMDSEARCH1 INY      ;REENTRY FOR WRONG MODES
CEBA:C8         352      INY      ;ENTRY LENGTH = 3
CEBB:D0 F2      353      BNE  CMDSEARCH ;<ALWAYS>
CEBD:          354 *
CEBD:C8         355  CMDMATCH INY
CEBE:B9 EB CC   356      LDA  CMDTBL,Y
CEC1:85 2A      357      STA  ZPTMP1
CEC3:29 20      358      AND  #$20      ;CHECK PASCAL ENABLE
CEC5:D0 07      359      BNE  CMDMATCH1 ;IT'S ON SO DONT CHECK P-BIT
CEC7:BD 38 07   360      LDA  MISCFLG,X ;OFF SO MAKE SURE
CECA:29 10      361      AND  #$10      ; THAT WE AREN'T IN PASCAL
CECC:D0 EB      362      BNE  CMDSEARCH1 ;BRANCH IF WE ARE
CECE:          363 *
CECE:BD 38 07   364  CMDMATCH1 LDA  MISCFLG,X ;GET CIC/PPC BIT
CED1:4A         365      LSR  A          ;SHIFT CIC/PPC MODE BIT TO CARRY
CED2:4A         366      LSR  A
CED3:24 2A      367      BIT  ZPTMP1      ;PPC->N CIC->V
CED5:B0 04      368      BCS  CMDMATCH2 ;BRANCH IF CIC MODE
CED7:10 E0      369      BPL  CMDSEARCH1 ;NOT OK FOR PPC
CED9:30 02      370      BMI  CMDEXEC      ;AND OK
CEDB:50 DC      371  CMDMATCH2 BVC  CMDSEARCH1 ;NOT OK FOR CIC
CEDD:          372 *
CEDD:A5 2A      373  CMDEXEC LDA  ZPTMP1      ;RETRIEVE TABLE MODE BYTE
CEDF:48         374      PHA
CEE0:29 07      375      AND  #$07
CEE2:20 7B CE   376      JSR  SETOSTATE ;SET NEXT STATE
CEE5:C8         377      INY
CEE6:68         378      PLA
CEE7:29 10      379      AND  #$10      ;
CEE9:D0 07      380      BNE  CMDEXEC1      ;IF BIT 4 IS SET, VECTOR TO ROUTINE
CEEB:B9 EB CC   381      LDA  CMDTBL,Y
EEEE:9D 38 04   382      STA  PARAMETER,X
CEF1:60         383      RTS
CEF2:          384 *
CEF2:A9 CD      385  CMDEXEC1 LDA  #$CD      ;ROUTINES MUST BE IN PAGE SCD
CEF4:48         386      PHA
CEF5:B9 EB CC   387      LDA  CMDTBL,Y
CEF8:48         388      PHA
CEF9:A4 26      389      LDY  SLOT16
CEFB:BD 38 04   390      LDA  PARAMETER,X ;LOT OF ROUTINES NEED THIS
CEFE:60         391      RTS
CEFF:          392 *
CEFF:00         393      DFB  $00

```

SYMBOL TABLE SORTED BY SYMBOL

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 3C A1L | CE6A ACCLOOP | CC02 ACIAOUT | ?CB9C ACK |
| C9C8 ADJRTS | C9B5 ADJUST | CB59 ANRTS | CCB7 ASCREEN |
| C8B8 BASICEXIT | 28 BASL | ?C93D BATCHIN | C9EF BATCHIO |
| ?C941 BATCHOUT | CD7D BAUDCMD | CD81 BAUDCMD1 | CD88 BAUDCMD2 |
| C711 BENTRY | C8EF BINACIA1 | C8EA BINACIA | C8E5 BINEND1 |
| C8D0 BINEND | C745 BINIT1 | ?C700 BINIT | C8C8 BINKBD |
| C8BF BINPUT | C77C BOUTPUT1 | C767 BOUTPUT | C78B BOUTPUT2 |
| CD11 BREAKCMD | 06B8 BUFBYTE | C8BA CDONE | 24 CH |
| 27 CHARACTER | CA1E CHECKTERM | 0638 CHNBYTE | C8B5 CICEXIT |
| C9EE CIEND | C9D1 CKINPUT | C9E5 CKINPUT1 | C9EB CKINPUT2 |

| | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| CC3D CKKBDXIT | CC2C CKKBD | CC34 CKKBD1 | 0538 CMDBYTE |
| CEP2 CMDEXEC1 | CEDD CMDEXEC | CECE CMDMATCH1 | CEBD CMDMATCH |
| CEB8 CMDMATCH2 | CEOA CMDPROC1 | CE0E CMDPROC2 | CE1A CMDPROC3 |
| CE24 CMDPROC4 | CDFC CMDPROC | C08A CMDREG | CEAF CMDSEARCH |
| CEB9 CMDSSEARCH1 | CB1A CMDSEQCK | CD19 CMDTBL1 | CCB8 CMDTBL |
| 06B8 COLBYTE | C917 COMMA | FD0D COUT | CD3B CRCMD |
| CE43 CSTATE1A | CE54 CSTATE1B | CE5E CSTATE1C | CE38 CSTATE1 |
| CE75 CSTATE2A | CE62 CSTATE2 | CE9C CSTATE4A | CEA1 CSTATE4B |
| CE8B CSTATE4 | 37 CSWH | 36 CSWL | C08B CTLREG |
| CD8E CTLRGSET | C9C9 CTRLTST | CDA1 DATACMD1 | CD9C DATACMD |
| C9C0 DECRCOL | 03B8 DELAYFLG | CD4B DELAYSET | C081 DIPSW1 |
| C082 DIPSW2 | C8FF DLYTBL | CB2E ESCCHECK | CB90 ETX |
| CD47 FPCMD | C968 FORCECR | C754 FROMIN | C751 FROMOUT |
| C8B4 GETCHAR1 | C8AA GETCHAR | CC72 GETCMD | CC3E GETKBD |
| CC44 GETKBD1 | CC91 GETKBDONE | CCDF GETXLATE | 0438 HANDSHKE |
| CDD4 ICMD | C705 IENTRY | 0200 INBUFF | C805 INIT1 |
| C827 INIT1A | C835 INIT2 | C83C INIT2A | C83F INIT2B |
| C857 INIT3 | C864 INIT4 | C872 INIT5 | ?C879 INITACIA |
| C882 INITACIA1 | C88F INITACIA2 | CB16 INPUT2 | CAFF INPUT |
| FF58 IORTS | C010 KBDSTRB | C000 KBD | CC5C KBDESC |
| CDE2 KCMD1 | CDE5 KCMD2 | CDE0 KCMD | 39 KSWH |
| 38 KSWL | CCD3 LCMASK | CD41 LFCMD | CBEA LFGEN |
| 0738 MISCFLG | CA0C MOVIN | C9FD MOVOUT | 07F8 MSL0T |
| CDE9 NCMD | CB58 NCMD | CB19 NOINPUT1 | CB18 NOINPUT |
| CCB6 NOOUT | C75C NORMIO | C954 NOTAB1 | C951 NOTAB |
| FCBA NXTA1 | C707 OENTRY | CB09 OUTDLY1 | CBE2 OUTDLYLP |
| CB68 OUTPUT1 | C86B OUTPUT2 | CB63 OUTPUT | CB01 OUTPUT3 |
| CBFE OUTPUTEND | ?CB76 P8AOUT1 | CBA6 P8AOUT2 | CBA9 P8AOUT3 |
| CB8B P8AOUT4 | 0438 PARAMETER | CD9B PARITYCMD | C800 PASCALINIT |
| ?C89E PASCALREAD1 | C89B PASCALREAD | C9AA PASCALWRITE | C8A3 PASEXIT |
| C99B PENTRY | C78E PINIT | ?C84D PREAD0 | C794 PREAD |
| CC93 PROMPTBL | CC5E PROMPTLOOP | C7A8 PSTATIN | C79A PSTATUS |
| C7AB PSTATUS2 | 0638 PWDBYTE | C9A6 PWDTBL | C797 PWRITE |
| CD8D QCMD1 | CD89 QUITCMD | C088 RDRCD | C089 RESET |
| CDAD RESETCMD | CC11 RESTORE | CC29 RESTOREND | C7EE RESTORHOOK |
| CCDB REVMASK | 4F RNDH | 4E RNDL | CFFF ROMSOFF |
| CD57 ROTATE | C7B2 SAVEHOOK | CC9E SCREENOUT | CCA3 SCREENOUT1 |
| C7B0 SENDCD | C998 SEREND2 | C97A SEREND | C8FC SEROUT |
| C996 SETCH | FE89 SETKBD | CE7B SETOSTATE | FE93 SETSCR |
| CEA4 SETSTATE6 | 26 SLOT16 | CAE9 SRIN1 | CAEB SRIN2 |
| CAD2 SRIN | CAF4 SRIN3 | CAF5 SROUT | CD7C SSL0TCMD1 |
| CD61 SSL0TCMD | 0100 STACK | 04B8 STATEFLG | CEA8 STATERR |
| CE30 STATETBL | C089 STREG | 05B8 STSBYTE | C934 TAB1 |
| C948 TAB2 | C921 TABCHECK | ?C088 TDREG | CA55 TERMACIAIN |
| CAAD TERMCAP1 | CA9B TERMCAP | CDA7 TERMCMO | ?CA4C TERMEXIT |
| CAB2 TERMINC1 | CAB1 TERMINC | CA66 TERMKBDIN | CA87 TERMLETTER |
| CAB1 TERMLOCK | ?CA23 TERMMODE | CA2B TERMNEXT | CA31 TERMNEXT1 |
| CA41 TERMNEXT2 | CA47 TERMNEXT3 | ?CA7D TERMNORM | CA54 TERMRIS |
| CA93 TERMSEND | CA95 TERMSEND1 | CCC6 TESTLETTER | CCC3 TOSCREEN |
| CD35 TRANCMD | CAB9 TRANSLATE | CCD7 UCMASK | FD66 VIDOUT |
| CAC4 WAITMS | CAC6 WAITMS1 | CB3C XOFFCK | CB5A XONWAIT |
| CDFB ZCMDRTS | CDFA ZCMD | CE79 ZEROSTATE | 35 ZPTMP |
| 2A ZPTMP1 | 2B ZPTMP2 | | |

SYMBOL TABLE SORTED BY ADDRESS

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 24 CH | 26 SLOT16 | 27 CHARACTER | 28 BASL |
| 2A ZPTMP1 | 2B ZPTMP2 | 35 ZPTMP | 36 CSWL |
| 37 CSWH | 38 KSWL | 39 KSWH | 3C A1L |
| 4E RNDL | 4F RNDH | 0100 STACK | 0200 INBUFF |
| 03B8 DELAYFLG | 0438 HANDSHKE | 0438 PARAMETER | 04B8 STATEFLG |

| | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------------|-------|------------|-------|------------|-------|-------------|
| 0538 | CMDBYTE | 05B8 | STSBYTE | 0638 | PWDBYTE | 0638 | CHNBYTE |
| 06B8 | COLBYTE | 06B8 | BUFBYTE | 0738 | MISCFLG | 07F8 | MSLOT |
| C000 | KBD | C010 | KBDSTRB | C081 | DIPSW1 | C082 | DIPSW2 |
| ?C088 | TDREG | C088 | RDRG | C089 | STREG | C089 | RESET |
| C08A | CMDREG | C08B | CTLREG | ?C700 | BINIT | C705 | IENTRY |
| C707 | OENTRY | C711 | BENTRY | C745 | BINIT1 | C751 | FROMOUT |
| C754 | FROMIN | C75C | NORMIO | C767 | BOUTPUT | C77C | BOUTPUT1 |
| C78B | BOUTPUT2 | C78E | PINIT | C794 | PREAD | C797 | PWRITE |
| C79A | PSTATUS | C7A8 | PSTATIN | C7AB | PSTATUS2 | C7B0 | SENDCCD |
| C7B2 | SAVEHOOK | C7EE | RESTORHOOK | C800 | PASCALINIT | C805 | INIT1 |
| C827 | INIT1A | C835 | INIT2 | C83C | INIT2A | C83F | INIT2B |
| ?C84D | PREAD0 | C857 | INIT3 | C864 | INIT4 | C872 | INIT5 |
| ?C879 | INITACIA | C882 | INITACIA1 | C88F | INITACIA2 | C89B | PASCALREAD |
| ?C89E | PASCALREAD1 | C8A3 | PASEXIT | C8AA | GETCHAR | C8B4 | GETCHAR1 |
| C8B5 | CICEXIT | C8B8 | BASICEXIT | C8BF | BINPUT | C8CB | BINKBD |
| C8D0 | BINEND | C8E5 | BINEND1 | C8EA | BINACIA | C8EF | BINACIA1 |
| C8FC | SEROUT | C917 | COMMA | C921 | TABCHECK | C934 | TAB1 |
| ?C93D | BATCHIN | ?C941 | BATCHOUT | C948 | TAB2 | C951 | NOTAB |
| C954 | NOTAB1 | C968 | FORCECR | C97A | SEREND | C996 | SETCH |
| C998 | SEREND2 | C99B | PENTRY | C9A6 | PWDTBL | C9AA | PASCALWRITE |
| C9B5 | ADJUST | C9C0 | DECRCOL | C9C8 | ADJRST | C9C9 | CTRLTST |
| C9D1 | CKINPUT | C9E5 | CKINPUT1 | C9EB | CKINPUT2 | C9EE | CIEND |
| C9EF | BATCHIO | C9FD | MOVOUT | CA0C | MOVIN | CA1E | CHECKTERM |
| ?CA23 | TERMMODE | CA2B | TERMNEXT | CA31 | TERMNEXT1 | CA41 | TERMNEXT2 |
| CA47 | TERMNEXT3 | ?CA4C | TERMEXIT | CA54 | TERMRTS | CA55 | TERMACIAIN |
| CA66 | TERMKBDIN | ?CA7D | TERMNORM | CA81 | TERMINC | CA82 | TERMINC1 |
| CA87 | TERMLETTER | CA93 | TERMSEND | CA95 | TERMSEND1 | CA9B | TERMCAP |
| CAAD | TERMCAP1 | CAB1 | TERMLCK | CAB9 | TRANSLATE | CAC4 | WAITMS |
| CAC6 | WAITMS1 | CAD2 | SRIN | CAE9 | SRIN1 | CAEB | SRIN2 |
| CAF4 | SRIN3 | CAF5 | SROUT | CAFF | INPUT | CB16 | INPUT2 |
| CB18 | NOINPUT | CB19 | NOINPUT1 | CB1A | CMDSEQCK | CB2E | ESCCHK |
| CB3C | XOFFCK | CB58 | NOCMD | CB59 | ANRTS | CB5A | XONWAIT |
| CB63 | OUTPUT | CB68 | OUTPUT1 | CB6B | OUTPUT2 | ?CB76 | P8AOUT1 |
| CB90 | ETX | ?CB9C | ACK | CBA6 | P8AOUT2 | CBA9 | P8AOUT3 |
| CBBB | P8AOUT4 | CB01 | OUTPUT3 | CB09 | OUTDLY1 | CBE2 | OUTDLYLP |
| CBEA | LFGEN | CBFE | OUTPUTEND | CBFF | DLTYBL | CC02 | ACIAOUT |
| CC11 | RESTORE | CC29 | RESTOREND | CC2C | CKKBD | CC34 | CKKBD1 |
| CC3D | CKKBDXIT | CC3E | GETKBD | CC44 | GETKBD1 | CC5C | KBDESC |
| CC5E | PROMPTLOOP | CC72 | GETCMD | CC91 | GETKBDONE | CC93 | PROMPTBL |
| CC9E | SCREENOUT | CCA3 | SCREENOUT1 | CCB6 | NOOUT | CCB7 | ASCREEN |
| CCC3 | TOSCREEN | CCC6 | TESTLETTER | CCD3 | LCMASK | CCD7 | UCMASK |
| CCDB | REVMASK | CCDF | GETXLATE | CCEB | CMDTBL | CD19 | CMDTBL1 |
| CD35 | TRANCMD | CD3B | CRCMD | CD41 | LFCMD | CD47 | FFCMD |
| CD4B | DELAYSET | CD57 | ROTATE | CD61 | SSLTCMD | CD7C | SSLTCMD1 |
| CD7D | BAUDCMD | CD81 | BAUDCMD1 | CD88 | BAUDCMD2 | CD8E | CTLREGSET |
| CD9B | PARITYCMD | CD9C | DATACMD | CDA1 | DATACMD1 | CD A7 | TERMCMD |
| CDAD | RESETCMD | CDB9 | QUITCMD | CDBD | QCMD1 | CDC1 | BREAKCMD |
| CDD4 | ICMD | CDE0 | KCMD | CDE2 | KCMD1 | CDE5 | KCMD2 |
| CDE9 | NCMD | CD F4 | ZCMD | CD F6 | ZCMDRTS | CD FC | CMDPROC |
| CE0A | CMDPROC1 | CE0E | CMDPROC2 | CE1A | CMDPROC3 | CE24 | CMDPROC4 |
| CE30 | STATETBL | CE38 | CSTATE1 | CE43 | CSTATE1A | CE54 | CSTATE1B |
| CE5E | CSTATE1C | CE62 | CSTATE2 | CE6A | ACCLoop | C755 | CSTATE2A |
| CE79 | ZEROSTATE | CE7B | SETOSTATE | CE8A | CDONE | CE8B | CSTATE4 |
| CE9C | CSTATE4A | CEA1 | CSTATE4B | CEA4 | SETSTATE6 | CEA8 | STATERR |
| CEAF | CMDSEARCH | CEB9 | CMDSEARCH1 | CEBD | CMDMATCH | CECE | CMDMATCH1 |
| CEDB | CMDMATCH2 | CEDD | CMDEXEC | CE F2 | CMDEXEC1 | CEFF | ROMSOFF |
| FCBA | NXTA1 | FEDE | COUT | FE F6 | VIDOUT | FE89 | SETKBD |
| FE93 | SETSCR | FF58 | IORTS | | | | |

APPENDIX B

APPLE INTERFACE CARD EMULATION

The SSC emulates both the P8 and the P8A versions of the Apple II Serial Interface Card (SIC), although the SSC is not completely POKE-compatible with either. In addition, the SSC supports several Apple II Communications Card and Parallel Card software commands.

OLD SERIAL INTERFACE CARD EMULATION

The SSC replaces the P8 and P8A versions of the Apple II Serial Interface Card (SIC) and it has two switch-selectable modes to emulate them, as explained below. However, because of firmware space limitations, the SSC does not support all functions of the older interface cards, and various POKE locations are different. This section explains these functional differences.

It is best to use Printer Mode rather than one of the emulation modes, except under these circumstances:

- if you have extensive existent applications that use PEEKs and POKEs to modify SIC operating characteristics
- if you need SIC P8A mode's ETX/ACK (or other-character/ACK) handshaking capabilities

What the SSC does NOT support that the old SIC does:

- P8 SIC block moves
- baud rates other than the 15 listed in the various baud rate tables in this manual (ACIA hardware generates only those 15)
- data formats other than 5 - 8 data bits and 1, 1-1/2 or 2 stop bits (ACIA characteristic; other formats rarely used anyway)
- <ESC>U and <ESC>L commands for upper and lowercase (but SSC's Translate command offers more options; POKEs also available)
- current-loop operation

To run the SSC in emulation of the old Apple II Serial Interface Card (SIC), prepare and install the SSC the same way as for Printer Mode (Chapters 1 and 2), with the following exceptions:

- Set mode switches SW1-5 ON and SW1-6 OFF to emulate the old SIC with a P8 ROM.
- Set mode switches SW1-5 OFF and SW1-6 OFF to emulate the old SIC with a P8A ROM.
- Install the SSC in whatever slot the old SIC was installed in for the application involved.
- Follow the instructions given in the next sections if the application program did PEEKs and POKes.

P8 EMULATION POKES

Changing SIC parameters was done either by setting the seven switches located on the card, or by POKEing the SIC slot RAM locations where this configuration data was stored. BASIC programs that talked through the old SIC may be used with the new SSC; however, if the program POKes at these slot RAM locations, those POKes must be changed to be compatible with the SSC's use of the RAM. The P8 and P8A ROMs differ slightly in their use of these RAM locations. Tables B-1 and B-2 show the transformation for P8 mode; additional differences for P8A mode are noted in the following section. Other POKE possibilities are described in Appendix A.

In the tables, the letter s stands for the slot number (1-7) in which the SSC is installed; the other letters are used as variables whose values are noted in the table (sometimes further down).

There is no claim that making these changes is simple. In fact, whenever possible it is best to use Printer Mode and its software commands to change SSC operating variables.

Here is an example of how to use the tables: let's say that the SSC is in slot #3. You want: a baud rate of 110; data format of 5 data bits and 2 stop bits, even parity; line width of 40 with video on, no automatic <LF> after <CR>; no translation of lowercase to uppercase; and no 1/4-second delay after <CR>. The PEEKs and POKes:

| | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| POKE 49339, 243 | (49291 + 3*16; 3 + 240) |
| POKE 49338, 107 | (49290 + 3*16; p = 107) |
| POKE 2043, 132 | (plug in magic number) |
| POKE 1147, 64 | (plug in magic number) |

The same thing in Printer Mode with appropriate switch settings is:

| | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| SW1-1 to SW1-7: | ON | ON | OFF | OFF | OFF | ON | ON |
| SW2-1 to SW2-7: | -- | OFF | ON | ON | OFF | OFF | OFF |

Then to set 5 data and 2 stop bits, use <CTRL-I>7D<RETURN>; for even parity, use <CTRL-I>3P<RETURN>; to leave lowercase alone, use <CTRL-I>1T<RETURN>. You can use commands to change baud rate, etc.

| Selection | SSC switches and settings | PEEKs and POKES to use for | |
|--|---|--|---|
| | | P8 Serial Card | Super Serial Card |
| P8 Mode: P8A Mode: | SW1-5 ON, SW1-6 OFF SW1-5 OFF, SW1-6 OFF | | |
| Baud Rate: 50 75 110 135 150 300 600 1200 1800 2400 3600 4800 7200 9600 19200 | SW1-1 to SW1-4 same as Printer Mode | POKE 1144+s,r r = (not available) 0 dec/\$00 hex 176 dec/\$B0 hex 144 dec/\$90 hex 128 dec/\$80 hex 64 dec/\$40 hex 32 dec/\$20 hex 16 dec/\$10 hex 11 dec/\$0B hex 8 dec/\$08 hex 5 dec/\$05 hex 4 dec/\$04 hex (not available) 2 dec/\$02 hex 1 dec/\$01 hex | POKE 49291+s*16,r r = b + d; b = 1 dec/\$01 hex 2 dec/\$02 hex 3 dec/\$03 hex 4 dec/\$04 hex 5 dec/\$05 hex 6 dec/\$06 hex 7 dec/\$07 hex 8 dec/\$08 hex 9 dec/\$09 hex 10 dec/\$0A hex 11 dec/\$0B hex 12 dec/\$0C hex 13 dec/\$0D hex 14 dec/\$0E hex 15 dec/\$0F hex |
| Data Format: 8 data,1 stop 7 data,1 stop 6 data,1 stop 5 data,1 stop 8 data,2 stop 7 data,2 stop 6 data,2 stop 5 data,2 stop | SW2-1 ON SW2-1 OFF | POKE 1912+s,r POKE 1272+s,t r = 9; t = 1* r = 8; t = 1* r = 7; t = 1* r = 6; t = 1* r = 9; t = 2* r = 8; t = 2* r = 7; t = 2* r = 6; t = 2* * add 1 if p = 1 or 0 | (to get r above, add d to b) d = 16 dec/\$10 hex 48 dec/\$30 hex 80 dec/\$50 hex 112 dec/\$70 hex 144 dec/\$90 hex 176 dec/\$B0 hex 208 dec/\$D0 hex 240 dec/\$F0 hex |
| Parity: none odd even MARK SPACE | | POKE 1400+s,p p = 2 p = 1 p = 0 (not available) (not available) | POKE 49290+s*16,p p = 11 (\$0B hex) p = 43 (\$2B hex) p = 107 (\$6B hex) (not available) (not available) |

Table B-1. SIC Switch Settings, PEEKs and POKES, Part I

| Selection | SSC switches and settings | PEEKs and POKES to use for | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|---|---|-----|---|---|---|---|---|------|---|---|---|---|---|------|---|---|---|---|----|------|---|---|---|---|----|------|---|---|---|---|----|------|---|---|---|---|----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|---|---|---|---|--|--|-----|-----|---|---|---|------|---|---|---|------|---|---|-----|------|---|---|-----|------|---|---|-----|-----|---|---|---|------|---|---|----|------|---|---|----|------|---|---|----|------|---|---|
| | | P8 Serial Card | | Super Serial Card | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Line Width: | SW2-3 & SW2-4, same as Printer Mode | POKE 1784+s, r r=1 to 255; for no <CR>, r=0 | | POKE 1784+s, r r=40 to 255; for no <CR>, PEEK 1400+s, POKE 1400+s, (old value + 128) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Video/ Generate <LF>/ Translate/ <CR> Delay: | SW2-3 & SW2-4 SW2-5 (no switch) SW2-2 (all switches same as in Printer Mode) | V = Video on? G = Gen. <LF>? T = LC to UC? D = Dly 1/4 s? POKE 2040+s, r r= <table><tr><th>dec</th><th>hex</th><th>V</th><th>G</th><th>T</th><th>D</th></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>\$04</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>\$05</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>36</td><td>\$24</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>37</td><td>\$25</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>68</td><td>\$44</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>69</td><td>\$45</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>100</td><td>\$64</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td><td>N</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>101</td><td>\$65</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>132</td><td>\$84</td><td>N</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>133</td><td>\$85</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>164</td><td>\$A4</td><td>N</td><td>N</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>165</td><td>\$A5</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>196</td><td>\$C4</td><td>N</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>197</td><td>\$C5</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>228</td><td>\$E4</td><td>N</td><td>N</td><td>N</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>229</td><td>\$E5</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td><td>N</td></tr></table> | | dec | hex | V | G | T | D | 4 | \$04 | Y | N | Y | Y | 5 | \$05 | Y | Y | Y | Y | 36 | \$24 | Y | N | N | Y | 37 | \$25 | Y | Y | N | Y | 68 | \$44 | Y | N | Y | N | 69 | \$45 | Y | Y | Y | N | 100 | \$64 | Y | N | N | N | 101 | \$65 | Y | Y | N | N | 132 | \$84 | N | N | Y | Y | 133 | \$85 | N | Y | Y | Y | 164 | \$A4 | N | N | N | Y | 165 | \$A5 | N | Y | N | Y | 196 | \$C4 | N | N | Y | N | 197 | \$C5 | N | Y | Y | N | 228 | \$E4 | N | N | N | N | 229 | \$E5 | N | Y | N | N | V = Video on? G = Gen. <LF>? POKE 2040+s, r r= <table><tr><th>dec</th><th>hex</th><th>V</th><th>G</th></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>\$04</td><td>N</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>\$05</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>132</td><td>\$84</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>133</td><td>\$85</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td></tr></table> T = LC to UC? D = Dly 1/4 s? POKE 1144+s, r r = <table><tr><th>dec</th><th>hex</th><th>T</th><th>D</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>\$00</td><td>Y</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>16</td><td>\$10</td><td>Y</td><td>Y</td></tr><tr><td>64</td><td>\$40</td><td>N</td><td>N</td></tr><tr><td>80</td><td>\$50</td><td>N</td><td>Y</td></tr></table> | | dec | hex | V | G | 4 | \$04 | N | N | 5 | \$05 | N | Y | 132 | \$84 | Y | N | 133 | \$85 | Y | Y | dec | hex | T | D | 0 | \$00 | Y | N | 16 | \$10 | Y | Y | 64 | \$40 | N | N | 80 | \$50 | N | Y |
| dec | hex | V | G | T | D | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | \$04 | Y | N | Y | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | \$05 | Y | Y | Y | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 36 | \$24 | Y | N | N | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 37 | \$25 | Y | Y | N | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 68 | \$44 | Y | N | Y | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 69 | \$45 | Y | Y | Y | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 100 | \$64 | Y | N | N | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 101 | \$65 | Y | Y | N | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 132 | \$84 | N | N | Y | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 133 | \$85 | N | Y | Y | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 164 | \$A4 | N | N | N | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 165 | \$A5 | N | Y | N | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 196 | \$C4 | N | N | Y | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 197 | \$C5 | N | Y | Y | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 228 | \$E4 | N | N | N | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 229 | \$E5 | N | Y | N | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dec | hex | V | G | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | \$04 | N | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | \$05 | N | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 132 | \$84 | Y | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 133 | \$85 | Y | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| dec | hex | T | D | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | \$00 | Y | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 16 | \$10 | Y | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 64 | \$40 | N | N | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 80 | \$50 | N | Y | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table B-2. SIC Switch Settings, PEEKs and POKEs, Part II

P8A EMULATION POKES

The P8A ROM differs from the P8 ROM in several ways:

1) The <CR> delay switch now determines whether an ETX/ACK handshake is performed after each <CR> that is transmitted. The corresponding RAM bit was not the same as the P8 <CR> delay bit, but was kept in bit 2 of location 1400+s. For SSC emulation, the control is the same as the <CR> delay bit as noted above (in location 1144+s).

2) The number of stop bits was always 2; for SSC P8A mode this is configured via switch SW2-1 and can also be set via software by POKEing location 4929 as noted above.

3) The printer width information was kept in the same location that the P8 ROM kept the number of stop bits; the P8 printer width byte was zeroed to avoid automatic generation of carriage returns. The SSC P8A emulation code keeps the printer width information in the

same place as for P8 emulation and uses the high-order bit at location 1400+s to control automatic generation of carriage returns.

4) Lowercase input is enabled by default for the P8A ROM; in P8A emulation, however, it is enabled by the POKE shown in Table B-2.

5) In contrast to the P8 ROM, the P8A ROM and the SSC do not support batch moves.

6) The enquire character for the SIC P8A ROM was ETX (ASCII 3); for SSC P8A mode, this can be changed to another control character by a POKE to location 1400+s. For example, to change the enquire character to ENQ (ASCII 5), which is used by many RS-232 devices, use this POKE: POKE 1400+s,5. Note that this also disables the automatic generation of carriage returns. Actually, any character between 0 and 31 can be used, although only 3 and 5 are used much.

OTHER EMULATION MODE DIFFERENCES

If your old programs, written to control one of the old Serial Interface Card ROMs, still don't work after you've followed all this handy advice, then read on.

The SSC always monitors the RS-232-C handshake lines to determine whether or not the device is ready to accept data. If your device fails to assert one of these lines, the SSC will wait patiently forever.

When the arrow on the jumper block is pointing toward TERMINAL, your device sees DCD and DSR asserted as soon as the SSC is initialized, and the SSC sees CTS whenever the device sends RTS. If the device does not assert both RTS and DTR, the SSC will assume it is not ready to receive data. This can be used as a hardware handshake to prevent buffer overflow at the device (e.g., when your printer runs out of paper it can stop asserting one of these lines and the SSC will wait while you put in more paper). If you do not connect these lines, the SSC will always treat them as if they were asserted.

The Serial Interface Card tied RTS to CTS, and DTR to DCD and DSR; if your RS-232 device depended upon this, you may want to make a special connector which does this.

Your device may have depended upon the half-duplex nature of the SIC. The ACIA on the SSC is able to send and receive at the same time and is always configured to do so.

The SIC was initialized each time it was called at location \$Cs00 (for example, by a PR#s or IN#s). The SSC is only reinitialized after the ACIA has been reset (either by resetting the Apple or by exiting from Printer or Communication Mode via a Reset command).

OLD COMMUNICATIONS CARD COMMANDS

The SSC supports all the functions supported by the old Apple II Communications Interface Card (CIC), although the two ACIAs' registers are not the same on a bit-by-bit level. The SSC also supports the CIC commands: <CTRL-T>, <CTRL-R>, and <CTRL-S>.

SWITCH TO TERMINAL MODE—<CTRL-T>

In Communication Mode, the SSC is initialized to recognize the remote-control command <CTRL-T> arriving in the stream of incoming data. This character causes the SSC to enter Terminal Mode (the same as the T(erminal command (Chapter 3). You can disable <CTRL-T> recognition by issuing an X(OFF D(isable command.

BYPASS TERMINAL MODE—<CTRL-R>

When the SSC is in Terminal Mode and X(OFF E(nable (the default in this mode) is in effect, the SSC recognizes the remote control command <CTRL-R> arriving in the input data stream, and responds by bypassing (exiting from) Terminal Mode. This is the same as the Q(uit Terminal Mode command (Chapter 3).

XOFF—<CTRL-S>

The SSC interprets <CTRL-S> as the ASCII XOFF character. When it receives <CTRL-S> from a remote device, it stops transmitting data until it receives an XON character from that device.

PARALLEL CARD COMMANDS

The SSC is not hardware compatible with the Apple II Parallel Cards. However, for the sake of compatibility with software written for parallel interface applications, the SSC supports the following commands. You do not need to follow these commands with <RETURN>.

LINE WIDTH n AND VIDEO OFF—<CTRL-I><n>N

This command turns off the Apple II video screen and generates a <CR> after n characters (if automatic <CR> generation is enabled via the C command (Chapter 2); n can be any value from 40 through 255.

LINE WIDTH 40 AND VIDEO ON—<CTRL-I>I

This command turns on the Apple II video screen and sets the line width to 40.

DISABLE AUTOMATIC LINEFEED—<CTRL-I>K

This command has the same effect as L(inefeed D(isable (Chapter 2): it turns off automatic generation of <LF> after <CR>.

APPENDIX C

SPECIFICATIONS AND SCHEMATICS

This appendix contains the SSC specifications, connector pin assignments, jumper block wiring, and a schematic diagram. Use the schematic diagram with the Theory of Operation section in Chapter 4.

SSC SPECIFICATIONS

PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

| | |
|-----------------|---|
| Dimensions | 2-3/4" x 7" (68.8 mm x 177.8 mm) |
| Weight | 3 oz. (90 gm), approximately |
| Cables required | internal cable from 10-pin header on SSC to DB-25 connector on case of Apple II (supplied); shielded RS-232-C cable to external device (not supplied) |
| Controls | 2 blocks of 7 switches each, set by user before installation |
| Special Tools | none required |

ENVIRONMENT

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Operating temperature | 40° F to 95° F (5° C to 35° C) |
| Storage temperature | -40° F to 122° F (-40° C to 50° C) |
| Operating relative humidity | 5% to 95% (noncondensing) |
| Storage relative humidity | 5% to 95% (noncondensing) |

SPECIAL CIRCUITS

| | |
|--------|---|
| SY6551 | Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter |
| 2316 | Read Only Memory (2,048 by 8 bits) with SSC firmware |
| | The SSC has the usual power supply bypassing capacitors |

APPLE II SLOT LOCATION

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| BASIC programs | any slot except slot #0 |
| APPLESOFT programs | any slot except slot #0 |
| PASCAL programs | slot #1 for use with printer, etc. |
| | slot #2 for use with modem |
| | slot #3 for use with terminal |

SOFTWARE COMPATIBILITY

The SSC is compatible with the following languages and operating systems:

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------|------------|----------------|
| Integer BASIC | DOS 3.2 | Pascal 1.0 | 6502 Assembler |
| Applesoft BASIC | DOS 3.3 | Pascal 1.1 | |

Under BASIC, input sent to the SSC at high baud rates may be lost, since the SSC can only buffer two characters at a time and BASIC may not be fast enough to read characters before they are overlaid.

In any software environment, characters may be lost when sent to the video screen in scrolling mode at greater than 300 baud. There are at least three solutions to this problem: lower the baud rate to 300 baud; reduce the scrolling window size (using 2 fewer lines already makes 1200 baud possible), or use an 80-column card with automatic hardware scrolling.

CONNECTOR PIN ASSIGNMENTS

Table C-1 lists the signals assigned to the connector pins on the 10-pin header at location 7B on the SSC, and the corresponding pins on the DB-25 connector that you attach to the back of the Apple II case.

10-pin DB-25

| Header | Connector | Signal name |
|--------|-----------|--------------------------------|
| 1 | 1 | Frame Ground |
| 2 | 2 | Transmit Data (TXD) |
| 3 | 3 | Receive Data (RXD) |
| 4 | 4 | Request To Send (RTS) |
| 5 | 5 | Clear To Send (CTS) |
| 6 | 6 | Data Set Ready (DSR) |
| 7 | 19 | Secondary Clear To Send (SCTS) |
| 8 | 7 | Signal Ground |
| 9 | 20 | Data Terminal Ready (DTR) |
| 10 | 8 | Data Carrier Detect (DCD) |

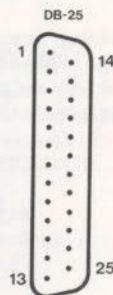


Table C-1. Connector Pin Assignments

JUMPER BLOCK WIRING

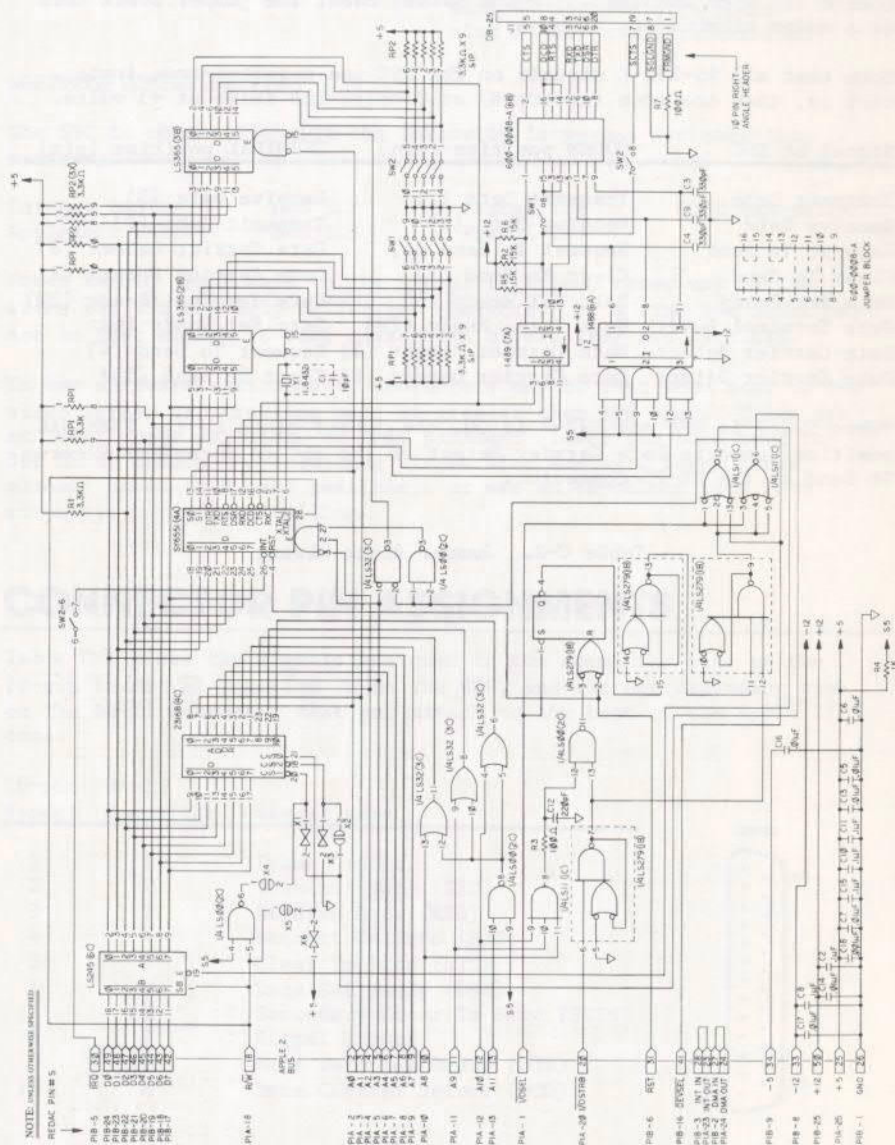
Table C-2 lists the signals that the jumper block connects to the SSC when the arrow points toward the word MODEM and when it points toward the word TERMINAL. In the latter case, the jumper block acts as a modem eliminator.

Note that all RS-232-C signals on the SSC use negative-true logic; that is, they are true (asserted) at 0 volts and false at +5 volts.

| Signal at SSC | MODEM position (pin) | TERMINAL position (pin) |
|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| Transmit Data | Transmit Data (2) | Receive Data (3) |
| Receive Data | Receive Data (3) | Transmit Data (2) |
| Request To Send | Request To Send (4) | Data Carrier Detect (8) |
| Clear To Send | Clear To Send (5) | Data Carrier Detect (8) |
| Data Set Ready | Data Set Ready (6) | Data Terminal Ready (20) |
| Data Terminal Ready | Data Term. Ready (20) | Data Set Ready (6) |
| Data Carrier Detect | Data Carrier Detect (8) | Request To Send (4) |
| Data Carrier Detect | Data Carrier Detect (8) | Clear To Send (5)* |

*When SW1-7 is OFF and SW2-7 is ON, the jumper block in the TERMINAL position connects Data Carrier Detect on the SSC to Secondary Clear To Send on the DB-25 connector.

Table C-2. Jumper Block Wiring



APPENDIX D

ASCII CODE TABLE

The table below shows the entire ASCII character set, and how to generate each character. Not all characters are available directly from the Apple II keyboard. However, in Terminal Mode (Chapter 3) you can generate all of the lowercase and special ASCII characters not accessible directly from the Apple II keyboard.

Here is how to interpret this table:

- The BINARY column has the 7-bit code for each ASCII character.
- The LOW DEC column gives the decimal equivalent of the 7-bit binary value. This value is the same if the binary code has 8 bits and the high-order bit is 0 (SPACE parity; Pascal).
- The LOW HEX column gives the corresponding hexadecimal value.
- The HI DEC column gives the decimal equivalent of the 7-bit binary value if a high-order bit equal to 1 is appended to it (MARK parity; BASIC); for example, 11001000 for the letter H.
- The HI HEX column gives the corresponding hexadecimal value.
- The ASCII CHAR column gives the ASCII character name.
- The INTERPRETATION column spells out the meaning of special symbols and abbreviations where necessary.
- The WHAT TO TYPE column indicates what keystrokes generate the ASCII character from the NORMAL (unaided) Apple II keyboard, and from the TERMINAL Mode (firmware assisted) keyboard. Characters not accessible are labeled "n/a." The numbers between columns refer to footnotes.
- Angle brackets enclose the names of single keys (like <ESC> for the ESC key), or enclose keystrokes involving more than one key (like <CTRL-SHIFT-M>, which means "hold down CTRL and SHIFT while pressing M.") But <ESC>9 means "type ESC, THEN type 9" because the 9 is outside the angle brackets.

To put the SSC in Terminal Mode, set SW1-5 and SW1-6 both ON; then use the T command or the remote-control <CTRL-T> command. When the SSC first enters Terminal Mode, the keyboard is locked in uppercase. Press <ESC> once for lowercase. This also prepares the SSC for the special <ESC>-plus-number keystrokes. Press <ESC> twice in a row to lock the keyboard in uppercase again.

| 7-BIT BINARY | LOW DEC | LOW HEX | HI DEC | HI HEX | ASCII CHAR | INTERPRETATION | WHAT TO TYPE NORMAL | TYPE TERMINAL |
|-----------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| 00000000 | 0 | 00 | 128 | 80 | NUL | Blank (null) | <CTRL-@> | |
| 00000001 | 1 | 01 | 129 | 81 | SOH | Start of Header | <CTRL-A> | 1 |
| 00000010 | 2 | 02 | 130 | 82 | STX | Start of Text | <CTRL-B> | |
| 00000011 | 3 | 03 | 131 | 83 | ETX | End of Text | <CTRL-C> | 2 |
| 00000100 | 4 | 04 | 132 | 84 | EOT | End of Transm. | <CTRL-D> | |
| 00000101 | 5 | 05 | 133 | 85 | ENQ | Enquiry | <CTRL-E> | 3 |
| 00000110 | 6 | 06 | 134 | 86 | ACK | Acknowledge | <CTRL-F> | 4 |
| 00000111 | 7 | 07 | 135 | 87 | BEL | Bell | <CTRL-G> | |
| 00010000 | 8 | 08 | 136 | 88 | BS | Backspace | <CTRL-H> | 5 |
| 00010001 | 9 | 09 | 137 | 89 | HT | Horizontal Tab | <CTRL-I> | 6 |
| 00010010 | 10 | 0A | 138 | 8A | LF | Linefeed | <CTRL-J> | |
| 00010011 | 11 | 0B | 139 | 8B | VT | Vertical Tab | <CTRL-K> | |
| 00010100 | 12 | 0C | 140 | 8C | FF | Form Feed | <CTRL-L> | |
| 00010101 | 13 | 0D | 141 | 8D | CR | Carriage Return | <CTRL-M> | 7 |
| 00010110 | 14 | 0E | 142 | 8E | SO | Shift Out | <CTRL-N> | |
| 00010111 | 15 | 0F | 143 | 8F | SI | Shift In | <CTRL-O> | |
| 00100000 | 16 | 10 | 144 | 90 | DLE | Data Link Escape | <CTRL-P> | |
| 00100001 | 17 | 11 | 145 | 91 | DC1 | Device Control 1 | <CTRL-Q> | 8 |
| 00100010 | 18 | 12 | 146 | 92 | DC2 | Device Control 2 | <CTRL-R> | 9 |
| 00100011 | 19 | 13 | 147 | 93 | DC3 | Device Control 3 | <CTRL-S> | 10 |
| 00100100 | 20 | 14 | 148 | 94 | DC4 | Device Control 4 | <CTRL-T> | 11 |
| 00100101 | 21 | 15 | 149 | 95 | NAK | Neg. Acknowledge | <CTRL-U> | 12 |
| 00100110 | 22 | 16 | 150 | 96 | SYN | Synchronization | <CTRL-V> | |
| 00100111 | 23 | 17 | 151 | 97 | ETB | End of Text Blk. | <CTRL-W> | |
| 00110000 | 24 | 18 | 152 | 98 | CAN | Cancel | <CTRL-X> | |
| 00110001 | 25 | 19 | 153 | 99 | EM | End of Medium | <CTRL-Y> | |
| 00110010 | 26 | 1A | 154 | 9A | SUB | Substitute | <CTRL-Z> | |
| 00110011 | 27 | 1B | 155 | 9B | ESC | Escape | <ESC> | 13 <ESC>0 |

1. Normal command character in Communication Mode.
2. Used in ETX/ACK protocol (SIC P8A Emulation Mode).
3. Used in ENQ/ACK protocol (SIC P8A Emulation Mode).
4. Used in ETX/ACK or ENQ/ACK protocol (SIC P8A Emulation Mode).
5. Or use ← key.
6. Normal Command character in Printer Mode.
7. Or use <RETURN> key.
8. XON in XON/XOFF protocol (usually in Communication Mode).
9. Remote-control command to Exit from Terminal Mode.
10. XOFF in XON/XOFF protocol (usually in Communication Mode).
11. Remote-control command to Enter Terminal Mode.
12. Or use → key.
13. Use the ESC key to generate the Escape character with the normal Apple II keyboard. In Terminal Mode, use <ESC>0.

| 7-BIT BINARY | LOW DEC | LOW HEX | HI DEC | HI HEX | ASCII CHAR | INTERPRETATION | WHAT TO NORMAL | TYPE TERMINAL |
|-----------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 0011100 | 28 | 1C | 156 | 9C | FS | File Separator | n/a | <ESC>1 |
| 0011101 | 29 | 1D | 157 | 9D | GS | Group Separator | <CTRL-SHIFT-M> | |
| 0011110 | 30 | 1E | 158 | 9E | RS | Record Separator | <CTRL-SHIFT-N> | |
| 0011111 | 31 | 1F | 159 | 9F | US | Unit Separator | n/a | <ESC>2 |
| 0100000 | 32 | 20 | 160 | A0 | SP | Space | spacebar | |
| 0100001 | 33 | 21 | 161 | A1 | ! | | ! | |
| 0100010 | 34 | 22 | 162 | A2 | " | | " | |
| 0100011 | 35 | 23 | 163 | A3 | # | | # | |
| 0100100 | 36 | 24 | 164 | A4 | \$ | | \$ | |
| 0100101 | 37 | 25 | 165 | A5 | % | | % | |
| 0100110 | 38 | 26 | 166 | A6 | & | | & | |
| 0100111 | 39 | 27 | 167 | A7 | ' | Closing Quote | ' | |
| 0101000 | 40 | 28 | 168 | A8 | (| | (| |
| 0101001 | 41 | 29 | 169 | A9 |) | |) | |
| 0101010 | 42 | 2A | 170 | AA | * | | * | |
| 0101011 | 43 | 2B | 171 | AB | + | | + | |
| 0101100 | 44 | 2C | 172 | AC | , | Comma | , | |
| 0101101 | 45 | 2D | 173 | AD | - | Hyphen | - | |
| 0101110 | 46 | 2E | 174 | AE | . | Period | . | |
| 0101111 | 47 | 2F | 175 | AF | / | | / | |
| 0110000 | 48 | 30 | 176 | B0 | Ø | | Ø | |
| 0110001 | 49 | 31 | 177 | B1 | 1 | | 1 | |
| 0110010 | 50 | 32 | 178 | B2 | 2 | | 2 | |
| 0110011 | 51 | 33 | 179 | B3 | 3 | | 3 | |
| 0110100 | 52 | 34 | 180 | B4 | 4 | | 4 | |
| 0110101 | 53 | 35 | 181 | B5 | 5 | | 5 | |
| 0110110 | 54 | 36 | 182 | B6 | 6 | | 6 | |
| 0110111 | 55 | 37 | 183 | B7 | 7 | | 7 | |
| 0111000 | 56 | 38 | 184 | B8 | 8 | | 8 | |
| 0111001 | 57 | 39 | 185 | B9 | 9 | | 9 | |
| 0111010 | 58 | 3A | 186 | BA | : | | : | |
| 0111011 | 59 | 3B | 187 | BB | ; | | ; | |
| 0111100 | 60 | 3C | 188 | BC | < | | < | |
| 0111101 | 61 | 3D | 189 | BD | = | | = | |
| 0111110 | 62 | 3E | 190 | BE | > | | > | |
| 0111111 | 63 | 3F | 191 | BF | ? | | ? | |
| 1000000 | 64 | 40 | 192 | C0 | @ | | @ | |
| 1000001 | 65 | 41 | 193 | C1 | A | | A | |
| 1000010 | 66 | 42 | 194 | C2 | B | | B | |
| 1000011 | 67 | 43 | 195 | C3 | C | | C | |
| 1000100 | 68 | 44 | 196 | C4 | D | | D | |
| 1000101 | 69 | 45 | 197 | C5 | E | | E | |
| 1000110 | 70 | 46 | 198 | C6 | F | | F | |
| 1000111 | 71 | 47 | 199 | C7 | G | | G | |
| 1001000 | 72 | 48 | 200 | C8 | H | | H | |
| 1001001 | 73 | 49 | 201 | C9 | I | | I | |
| 1001010 | 74 | 4A | 202 | CA | J | | J | |
| 1001011 | 75 | 4B | 203 | CB | K | | K | |
| 1001100 | 76 | 4C | 204 | CC | L | | L | |
| 1001101 | 77 | 4D | 205 | CD | M | | M | |
| 1001110 | 78 | 4E | 206 | CE | N | | N | |

| 7-BIT BINARY | LOW DEC | LOW HEX | HI DEC | HI HEX | ASCII CHAR | INTERPRETATION | WHAT TO TYPE NORMAL | TYPE TERMINAL |
|-----------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| 1001111 | 79 | 4F | 207 | CF | O | | O | |
| 1010000 | 80 | 50 | 208 | D0 | P | | P | |
| 1010001 | 81 | 51 | 209 | D1 | Q | | Q | |
| 1010010 | 82 | 52 | 210 | D2 | R | | R | |
| 1010011 | 83 | 53 | 211 | D3 | S | | S | |
| 1010100 | 84 | 54 | 212 | D4 | T | | T | |
| 1010101 | 85 | 55 | 213 | D5 | U | | U | |
| 1010110 | 86 | 56 | 214 | D6 | V | | V | |
| 1010111 | 87 | 57 | 215 | D7 | W | | W | |
| 1011000 | 88 | 58 | 216 | D8 | X | | X | |
| 1011001 | 89 | 59 | 217 | D9 | Y | | Y | |
| 1011010 | 90 | 5A | 218 | DA | Z | | Z | |
| 1011011 | 91 | 5B | 219 | DB | [| Opening Bracket | n/a | <ESC>3 |
| 1011100 | 92 | 5C | 220 | DC | \ | Reverse Slant | n/a | <ESC>4 |
| 1011101 | 93 | 5D | 221 | DD |] | Closing Bracket | <SHIFT-M> | |
| 1011110 | 94 | 5E | 222 | DE | ^ | Circumflex | ^ | |
| 1011111 | 95 | 5F | 223 | DF | ¯ | Underline | n/a | <ESC>5 |
| 1100000 | 96 | 60 | 224 | E0 | " | Opening Quote | n/a | 15 |
| 1100001 | 97 | 61 | 225 | E1 | a | | n/a | a |
| 1100010 | 98 | 62 | 226 | E2 | b | | n/a | b |
| 1100011 | 99 | 63 | 227 | E3 | c | | n/a | c |
| 1100100 | 100 | 64 | 228 | E4 | d | | n/a | d |
| 1100101 | 101 | 65 | 229 | E5 | e | | n/a | e |
| 1100110 | 102 | 66 | 230 | E6 | f | | n/a | f |
| 1100111 | 103 | 67 | 231 | E7 | g | | n/a | g |
| 1101000 | 104 | 68 | 232 | E8 | h | | n/a | h |
| 1101001 | 105 | 69 | 233 | E9 | i | | n/a | i |
| 1101010 | 106 | 6A | 234 | EA | j | | n/a | j |
| 1101011 | 107 | 6B | 235 | EB | k | | n/a | k |
| 1101100 | 108 | 6C | 236 | EC | l | | n/a | l |
| 1101101 | 109 | 6D | 237 | ED | m | | n/a | m |
| 1101110 | 110 | 6E | 238 | EE | n | | n/a | n |
| 1101111 | 111 | 6F | 239 | EF | o | | n/a | o |
| 1110000 | 112 | 70 | 240 | F0 | p | | n/a | p |
| 1110001 | 113 | 71 | 241 | F1 | q | | n/a | q |
| 1110010 | 114 | 72 | 242 | F2 | r | | n/a | r |
| 1110011 | 115 | 73 | 243 | F3 | s | | n/a | s |
| 1110100 | 116 | 74 | 244 | F4 | t | | n/a | t |
| 1110101 | 117 | 75 | 245 | F5 | u | | n/a | u |
| 1110110 | 118 | 76 | 246 | F6 | v | | n/a | v |
| 1110111 | 119 | 77 | 247 | F7 | w | | n/a | w |
| 1111000 | 120 | 78 | 248 | F8 | x | | n/a | x |
| 1111001 | 121 | 79 | 249 | F9 | y | | n/a | y |
| 1111010 | 122 | 7A | 250 | FA | z | | n/a | z |
| 1111011 | 123 | 7B | 251 | FB | { | Opening Brace | n/a | <ESC>6 |
| 1111100 | 124 | 7C | 252 | FC | | Vertical Line | n/a | <ESC>7 |
| 1111101 | 125 | 7D | 253 | FD | } | Closing Brace | n/a | <ESC>8 |
| 1111110 | 126 | 7E | 254 | FE | ~ | Overline (Tilde) | n/a | <ESC>9 |
| 1111111 | 127 | 7F | 255 | FF | DEL | Delete/Rubout | n/a | <ESC>: |

15. Use Closing Quote (39). For high value, use CHR\$(96), etc.

APPENDIX E

TROUBLESHOOTING HINTS

This appendix contains two tables designed to help you diagnose problems that can occur when using the SSC to communicate with an RS-232-C device. The device can be a printer, or a plotter, or terminal, or another computer, or some other Data Terminal Equipment (DTE), and it can be connected either directly, or via a modem or some other Data Communication Equipment (DCE). Whenever two DTEs are connected together, there must be TWO modems (DCEs) or ONE modem eliminator (such as the jumper block when it points toward the word TERMINAL) between them.

When diagnosing problems, remember that there are many variables involved in the communications connection:

- the Apple II and its keyboard, screen, and software
- the SSC, the slot it is in, its switch settings (especially mode selection), its jumper block, cable, and software commands
- the external cable, with some number of wires (enough wires?) connected to pins (all the correct pins?) at each end
- possibly two modems connected by low-grade telephone lines, plus another cable from the remote modem to the remote device
- an RS-232-C device at the other end, with its own switch settings and needs (such as paper, ribbon, AC power...)

As you can see, making all these components work together correctly is no mean feat. If there are problems, the easiest way to resolve them is to start with very simple, sure communication between the Apple and the device. Once you have established basic communication (even if the characters are garbled), further troubleshooting becomes much easier. Be patient and methodical.

Trouble usually has characteristics visible on the Apple II screen (Table E-1), or at the device (Table E-2). If your troubleshooting efforts fail, consult your Apple dealer--but first record all the variables (as outlined above) and the symptoms you observed.

| Problem | Symptom | Possible Cause | Solution |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| no data transfer | no sign of any communication at all | cable wires not connected OK; jumper block facing wrong way | check all cable connections, then pin assignments; try reversing jumper block |
| characters garbled | jh2 3g%\$Q | wrong baud rate | change SW1-1 TO SW1-4 or use <n>B command |
| | | wrong data format | change SW2-1 (and SW2-2 in Comm Mode) or use <n>D command to change format |
| | | other device is off, out of paper, etc., off-line | turn on device, remedy its problems, put it on-line |
| paper not advancing | one line of smudge | printer needs line feeds from SSC | turn SW2-5 ON or use L(inefeed E(nable command |
| printer is skipping lines | lines look like this | printer and SSC both generating <LF> after <CR> | turn off SW2-5 in Printer Mode, or use L(inefeed D(isable command |
| missing characters | mssig caractrs | device buffer is overflowing | <p>if device supports full RS-232-C handshaking, ensure all required cable wires are connected</p> <p>if device supports only ETX/ACK, set SIC P8A Mode</p> <p>if device supports XON/XOFF, set Printer Mode and use X(OFF E(nable cmd or set Comm Mode</p> <p>if device supports none of these, set delays with <n>C, <n>L and <n>F cmds</p> |
| device sticks at line's end going nuts | one long OK line, smudge at right end | device doesn't generate own <CR>, and isn't getting enough from Apple | <p>use SIC P8 Mode and <n>N command, or Printer Mode and C command plus appropriate SW2-3 and SW2-4</p> <p>have software send <CR> before right margin</p> |

Table E-1. Problems Detected at the Device

| Problem | Symptom | Possible Cause | Solution |
|--|---|--|--|
| Apple has occasional bad times | it works one minute & not next | ACIA interrupting the Apple when DCD or DSR changes | make sure that interrupt switch SW2-6 is OFF |
| Apple not working | dead kybd and screen | SSC in slot #3 under Pascal | Pascal expects external terminal to run the show |
| Apple kybd seems off | keystrokes all lost | echo off; keyboard zapped; IN# not 0 | use E(cho E(nable cmd; unzip with POKE; IN#0 |
| screen seems off | nothing typed is displayed | device not echoing (half duplex) or ACIA not sending to screen | in Comm or Terminal Mode, use E(cho E(nable; in SIC or Printer Mode, use I command or SW2-3 & -4 ON |
| screen is seeing double | eevveerry tthhiinnngg ttwwiiccee | device & SSC both echoing to Apple (full duplex) | use E(cho D(isable cmd in Comm Mode or use <n>N cmd in Printer Mode |
| screen is spacing double | lines look like this | device generating and sending <LF> after <CR> | use M(ask E(nable command to remove extra linefeeds |
| forced uppercase display | lowercase beCOMES UPPERCASE | Apple monitor changing letters in GETLINE routine | use <n>T command to allow lowercase to pass through (not possible in Pascal) |
| Apple misses some characters at the beginning of lines | pple sses ome racters t the bgnning lines | screen scrolling too slowly, or BASIC or Pascal program running too slowly, and so ACIA overruns | turn off screen (<n>N or SW2-3 & -4 in Prtr Mode); reduce scroll window; use assembly language or faster program routines; use lower baud rate (300 vs. 1200); use <n>C, <n>L or <n>F commands; in Comm Mode, chain (<n>S cmd) to 80-column card with its own scrolling hardware |

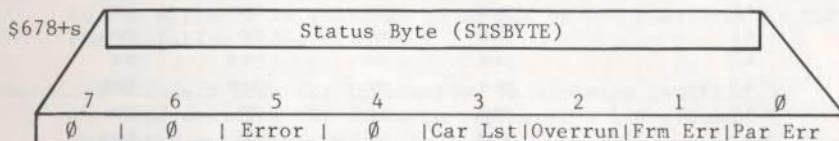
Table E-2. Problems Detected at the Apple

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <p>1. The first part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The letter discusses the author's interest in the subject of the journal and the importance of the work being presented.</p> | <p>2. The second part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> | <p>3. The third part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> |
| <p>4. The fourth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> | <p>5. The fifth part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> | <p>6. The sixth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> |
| <p>7. The seventh part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> | <p>8. The eighth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> | <p>9. The ninth part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> |
| <p>10. The tenth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> | <p>11. The eleventh part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> | <p>12. The twelfth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> |
| <p>13. The thirteenth part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> | <p>14. The fourteenth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> | <p>15. The fifteenth part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> |
| <p>16. The sixteenth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> | <p>17. The seventeenth part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> | <p>18. The eighteenth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> |
| <p>19. The nineteenth part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> | <p>20. The twentieth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> | <p>21. The twenty-first part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> |
| <p>22. The twenty-second part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> | <p>23. The twenty-third part of the document is a letter from the author to the editor, dated 1955. The author responds to the editor's request and provides the requested information.</p> | <p>24. The twenty-fourth part of the document is a letter from the editor to the author, dated 1955. The editor expresses his interest in the work and asks for further information.</p> |

APPENDIX F

ERROR CODES

The SSC uses I/O scratchpad address \$678+s (s is the number of the slot that the SSC is in) to record status after a read operation. The firmware calls this byte STSBYTE. Table F-1 lists the bit definitions of this byte:



| Bit | "1" Means | "0" Means |
|-----|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 0 | Parity Error occurred | No Parity Error occurred |
| 1 | Framing Error occurred | No Framing Error occurred |
| 2 | Overrun occurred | No Overrun occurred |
| 3 | Carrier lost | Carrier present |
| 5 | Error occurred | No error occurred |

Table F-1. STSBYTE Bit Definitions

The terms Parity Error, Framing Error and Overrun are defined in the Glossary.

Bits 0, 1, and 2 are the same as the corresponding three bits of the ACIA Status Register (Appendix A). Bit 3 indicates whether or not the Data Carrier Detect (DCD; Chapter 4) signal went false at any time during the receive operation. Bit 5 is set if any of the other bits are set, as an overall error indicator. If bit 5 is the only bit set, an unrecognized command was detected. If all bits are 0, no error occurred.

In BASIC, you can check this status byte via a PEEK \$678+s (s is the SSC slot), and reset it with a POKE command at the same location.

In Pascal, the IORESULT function returns the error code value.



Any character--including the carriage return at the end of a WRITELN statement--will cause posting of a new value in IORESULT.

Table F-2 shows the possible combinations of error bits correspond to these decimal error codes.

| BASIC PEEK \$678+s or Pascal IORESULT | Carrier Lost | Overrun | Framing Error | Parity Error |
|--|-----------------|---------|------------------|-----------------|
| Ø | | | | |
| 32 | | | | |
| 33 | no | no | no | yes |
| 34 | no | no | yes | no |
| 35 | no | no | yes | yes |
| 36 | no | yes | no | no |
| 37 | no | yes | no | yes |
| 38 | no | yes | yes | no |
| 39 | no | yes | yes | yes |
| 40 | yes | no | no | no |
| 41 | yes | no | no | yes |
| 42 | yes | no | yes | no |
| 43 | yes | no | yes | yes |
| 44 | yes | yes | no | no |
| 45 | yes | yes | no | yes |
| 46 | yes | yes | yes | no |
| 47 | yes | yes | yes | yes |

Table F-2. Error Codes and Bits

These error codes begin with the number 32 to avoid conflicting with previously defined and documented system error codes.

GLOSSARY

To avoid lengthy or repetitive definitions, many terms used in one definition are themselves defined elsewhere in this glossary. Also for the sake of brevity, terms and expressions are spelled out, with their abbreviations immediately after them. In a glossary of this size, the reader will have little difficulty locating abbreviations.

ACK: An ASCII character (decimal 6; Appendix D) sent from a device to the Apple II in response to an ETX or ENQ character in SIC P8A Emulation Mode.

American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII): A standard defining the codes to represent a 128-element character set (Appendix D) in a fixed way for devices of different manufacturers. It is the standard for digital communication over telephone lines.

Asserted: Made true (positive in positive-true logic; negative in negative-true logic). Usually refers to electrical signals, like the RS-232-C signal Clear To Send, etc.

Asynchronous: Having a variable time interval between characters.

Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter (ACIA): In the SSC, a single chip (Synertek 6551 or equivalent) that converts data from parallel to serial form and vice versa, and handles serial transmission and reception and RS-232-C signals, under the control of internal registers set and changed by SSC firmware.

Baud: A unit of signalling speed equal to the number of discrete conditions or signal events per second. With the SSC, for example, using a data format of 1 start bit, 7 data bits, 1 parity bit and 1 stop bit (10 bits in all), 300 baud is approximately equal to 30 characters per second.

Binary: A number system with two digits, "0" and "1," with each digit position moving from right to left representing a successive power of two. For example, 1 represents decimal 1; 10 represents 2; 100 represents 4; 1000 represents 8, etc.

Bit: A BInary digiT, either a 0 or a 1.

BREAK: A 0.233 second SPACE (Ø) signal sent over a communication line to interrupt the sender. This signal is often used to end a session with a timesharing service.

Carriage Return (CR): An ASCII character (decimal 13; Appendix D) that ordinarily causes a printer or display screen to place the subsequent character on the left margin. On a manual typewriter, this movement is combined with linefeed (the advancement of the paper to the next line). With computers, carriage return and linefeed are separate, causing hair-raising problems for the user.

Carrier: The background signal on a communication channel that is modified to "carry" the information. Under RS-232-C, the carrier signal is equivalent to a continuous MARK or 1; a transition to Ø then represents a start bit.

Character: Any symbol that has a widely understood meaning. In the ASCII code, letters, numbers, punctuation marks, and so on, are all characters (Appendix D).

Chip: A tiny wafer of silicon, with conductive metallic impurities, that has layers of microscopic circuits etched on it.

Clear To Send (CTS): An RS-232-C signal from a DCE to a DTE that the SSC keeps false until the DCE makes it true, indicating that all circuits are ready to transfer data.

Command Character: An ASCII character, usually <CTRL-A> or <CTRL-I> (Appendix D), that causes the SSC firmware to interpret subsequent characters as a command.

Command Register: An ACIA location (at hexadecimal address \$C08A+sØ) that stores parity type and RS-232-C signal characteristics.

Communications Interface Card (CIC): An Apple II interface card designed to connect the Apple II to a device via a DCE.

Communications Mode: An operating state in which the SSC is prepared to exchange data and signals with a DCE.

Control Character: Any character generated by holding down the key marked CTRL while pressing some other key.

Control Register: An ACIA location (at hexadecimal address \$C08B+sØ) that stores data format and baud rate selections.

Daisy Chaining: A method of passing incoming signals and data from one peripheral connector slot to another, such as from the SSC slot to a slot containing an 80-column-display card.

Data Bit: With the SSC, one of 5 to 8 bits representing a character.

- Data Carrier Detect (DCD): An RS-232-C signal from a DCE to a DTE (such as the Apple II) indicating that a communication connection has been established. The SSC's internal circuits hold DCD false until the external device sets DCD true.
- Data Communication Equipment (DCE): As defined by the RS-232-C standard, any device that transmits or receives information. Usually this is a modem. However, when a Modem Eliminator is used, the Apple II looks like a DCE to the other device, and the other device looks like a DCE to the Apple.
- Data Conversion: Changing of data from parallel to serial form or from serial to parallel form.
- Data Format: The form in which data is stored, manipulated or transferred. Serial data transmitted and received by the SSC has a data format of: one start bit, 5 to 8 data bits, an optional parity bit, and one, one and a half, or two stop bits.
- Data Set Ready (DSR): An RS-232-C signal from a DCE to a DTE indicating that the DCE has established a connection.
- Data Terminal Equipment (DTE): As defined by the RS-232-C standard, any device that generates or absorbs information, thus acting as a terminus of a communication connection.
- Data Terminal Ready (DTR): An RS-232-C signal from a DTE to a DCE indicating a readiness to transmit or receive data.
- Default Value: A value that is assumed or set in the absence of explicit instructions otherwise.
- Device: A piece of equipment; usually a printer, plotter, terminal or computer. When the jumper block is in the MODEM position, the SSC expects the device to be a DCE (such as a modem).
- Echo: To send an input character to a video screen, printer, or other output device. On a typewriter, what we strike on the keyboard appears on the page in the same step. With a computer, these two steps are controlled separately.
- Electromagnetic Interference (EMI): Electrical or magnetic signals or noise that disturbs the operation of radio or television receivers. For example, a hair dryer often creates EMI that fuzzes up the picture on a nearby television set.
- Emulation Mode: A manner of operating in which one computer or interface imitates another. For example, in SIC P8 Emulation Mode, the SSC acts very much like an Apple II Serial Interface Card with the P8 version of firmware.
- ENQ: An ASCII character (decimal 5; Appendix D) used in the ENQ/ACK protocol (SIC P8A Emulation Mode).

ETX: An ASCII character (decimal 3; Appendix D) used in the ETX/ACK protocol (SIC P8A Emulation Mode).

Even Parity: Use of an extra bit set to 0 or 1 as necessary to make the total number of 1 bits an even number. For example, the 7-bit ASCII code for the letter A (1000001) has two 1 bits; for even parity, the transmitting device appends an eighth bit equal to 0 so that the total number of 1 bits remains even. The receiving device can count 1 bits as a way of checking for transmission errors.

False: Zero or negative voltage in positive-true logic; positive voltage in negative-true logic. Absence of an arbitrary signal or condition.

Firmware (FW): Software that resides in ROM and so is relatively unchangeable (firm) compared to software in RAM.

Form Feed (FF): An ASCII character (decimal 12; Appendix D) that causes a printer or other paper-handling device to advance to the top of the next page.

Framing Error (FRM): Absence of the expected stop bit(s) on a received character. The ACIA records this error by setting bit 1 (FRM) of its Status Register to 1. The ACIA checks and records each framing error separately: if the next character is OK, the FRM bit is cleared.

Full Duplex: Capable of simultaneous two-way communications.

Half Duplex: Capable of communications in one direction at a time.

Handshake : A kind of communication protocol in which the receiving device, when it has successfully gotten a character or block of characters, sends back an acknowledging signal, thereby triggering the next transmission.

Hardware: The actual physical switches, wires, chips, PC boards, and so on, of a computer system.

Header: A cable connector mounted on a PC board.

Hexadecimal: A numbering system that uses 16 digits; usually these are represented by the ten decimal digits, 0 through 9, plus the letters A through F (A representing decimal ten, F representing decimal fifteen, etc.). Each hexadecimal digit can represent a string of four binary digits.

High-order Bit: See Most Significant Bit.

Initialization: The process of setting up initial values and conditions. In the SSC, the firmware finds out the switch positions and the current operating system, and uses these

findings to initialize both the ACIA registers and the Scratchpad RAM locations for the slot the SSC is in.

Input: Data that flows from the outside world into the Apple II.

Interface: Some combination of hardware, firmware and software that makes possible the useful connection of two otherwise incompatible pieces of equipment.

Interrupt: A special control signal from an external source that diverts the Apple II from the program it is executing to a specific routine that handles the condition (such as a printer gone awry) that caused the interrupt.

Jumper Block: In the SSC, a plastic plug with pins connected in such a way that it passes RS-232-C signals between the SSC and the external device either unchanged (MODEM position) or permuted in the manner of a Modem Eliminator (TERMINAL position).

Least Significant Bit (LSB): The right-hand bit of a binary number as written down; its positional value is 0 or 1 (that is, 0 or 1 times 2 to the 0 power).

Linefeed (LF): An ASCII character (decimal 10 ; Appendix D) that ordinarily causes a printer or video display to advance to the next line.

Local: Nearby; capable of direct connection using wires only.

Low-order Bit: See Least Significant Bit.

MARK Parity: A bit of value 1 appended to the high-order end of a binary number for transmission. The receiving device can then check for errors by looking for this value on each character.

Mode: Manner of operating. The SSC can operate in one of four chief modes, depending on the settings of switches SW1-5 and SW1-6: Printer Mode, Communications Mode, SIC P8 Emulation Mode, and SIC P8A Emulation Mode.

Modem: MODulator/DEModulator; a DCE device that connects a DTE to communications lines. As used with the SSC, a device that exchanges RS-232-C signals with the ACIA to establish a communications connection, and then either converts data from RS-232-C voltages to RS-232-C tones for transmission, or performs the opposite conversion on received data.

Modem Eliminator: The physical crossing of wires that replaces a pair of modems for direct connection of two pieces of RS-232-C Data Terminal Equipment. In the SSC, the jumper block serves this purpose when installed in the TERMINAL position.

- Most Significant Bit (MSB):** The leftmost bit of a binary number as written down. This bit represents 0 or 1 times 2 to the power one less than the total number of bits in the binary number. For example, in the binary number 10000, the 1 represents 1 times 2 to the fourth power, or sixteen.
- Odd Parity:** Use of an extra bit set to 0 or 1 as necessary to make the total number of 1 bits an odd number. For example, the 7-bit ASCII code for the letter A (1000001) has two 1 bits; for odd parity, the transmitting device appends an eighth bit equal to 1, making the total number of 1 bits odd. The receiving device can check for transmission errors by counting 1 bits.
- Output:** Data that flows from the Apple II to an external device.
- Overrun (OVR):** A condition that occurs when the Apple II processor does not retrieve a received character from the Receive Data Register before the subsequent character arrives. The ACIA automatically sets bit 2 (OVR) of its Status Register; subsequent characters are lost. The Receive Data Register contains the last valid data word received.
- P8:** One of two types of Programmable ROM (PROM) installed in the Apple II Serial Interface Card. This PROM performed batch moves, but had no provision for software handshaking.
- P8A:** One of two types of Programmable ROM (PROM) installed in the Apple II Serial Interface Card. This PROM provided the ENQ/ACK software handshaking required by several types of printers.
- Parallel Interface:** A connection between two devices where there is a separate wire for each bit of a character, so that an entire character can be transferred in a single instant.
- Parity:** Maintenance of a sameness of level or count, usually the count of 1 bits in each character, for error checking. In the SSC, the ACIA has a register that stores the type of parity selected (none, odd, even, MARK or SPACE). It automatically generates the parity bit when transmitting, and both checks and discards parity bits appended to received characters.
- Parity Error (PAR):** Absence of the correct parity bit value in a received character. The ACIA records this error by setting bit 0 (PAR) of its Status Register to 1.
- Peripheral Connector Slot:** One of eight 50-pin slots inside the Apple II case near the back. Within certain restrictions, each slot can contain add-on memory, an adapter for 80-column display, or an interface to an external device.
- Polarized Header:** On the SSC, a 10-pin female connector for the internal cable; this connector has a slot on one side that receives a "key" on the cable's male connector.

Printed Circuit (PC) Board: A sheet of stiff nonconductive material with one or more thin layers of metal bonded to it. Unwanted areas of this metal are etched away, leaving the paths of the desired circuits. Electronic components can then be soldered to the board. Small PC boards are also called cards.

Printer Mode: An operating state in which the SSC is prepared to exchange data and signals with another DTE (such as a printer).

Protocol: A predefined exchange of control signals between devices enabling them to prepare for coordinated data transfer.

Radio Frequency Interference (RFI): Electromagnetic interference occurring at frequencies used for radio communications.

Random Access Memory (RAM): A series of storage locations that can be accessed directly (by means of horizontal and vertical coordinates) for both reading and writing.

Read Only Memory (ROM): A series of storage locations that can be read but cannot be written to; this protects the programs and data in the ROM from alteration or destruction.

Receive Data Register: A read-only register in the ACIA (at hexadecimal location $\$C088+s0$) that stores the most recent character successfully received.

Remote: Too distant for direct connection via wires or cables only.

Request To Send (RTS): An RS-232-C signal from a DTE to a DCE to prepare the DCE for data transmission.

Ring Indicator (RI): An optional RS-232-C signal from a DCE to a DTE that indicates the arrival of a call.

RS-232-C: A standard created by the Electronic Industries Association (EIA) to allow devices of different manufacturers to exchange serial data--particularly via telephone lines. The ACIA in the SSC implements all the required primary RS-232-C signals. These signals are true when at 0 volts.

Scratchpad RAM: Eight locations in the Apple's memory reserved for each of the 8 peripheral connector slots (64 bytes in all).

Secondary Clear To Send (SCTS): A secondary RS-232-C signal that some printers use instead of Clear To Send.

Serial Interface: A connection in which all the bits of a character are sent along a single wire one after the other.

Serial Interface Card (SIC): An Apple II product designed to connect an RS-232-C device directly to the Apple II.

SIC Emulation Mode: A state of operation in which the SSC imitates an Apple II Serial Interface Card.

SPACE Parity: A bit of value 0 appended to a binary number for transmission. The receiving device can look for this value on each character as a means of error checking.

Start Bit: A transition from a MARK signal to a SPACE signal for one bit-time, indicating that the next string of bits represents a character.

Status Register: An ACIA register (hexadecimal location \$C089+s0) that stores the state of two of the RS-232-C signals and of the Transmit and Receive Data Registers, as well as the outcome of the most recent character transfer.

Stop Bit: A MARK signal following a string of data bits to indicate the end of a character.

Super Serial Card (SSC): The interface card described in this manual. It is called "super" because it can simultaneously transmit and receive data in one of 35 formats at any of 15 speeds, honor several software protocols, communicate directly with either DTE or DCE, change operating characteristics in response to software commands, and dovetail with the chief operating environments offered with the Apple II.

Terminal: An input/output device, usually made up of a keyboard and video display and sometimes including its own printer and magnetic storage devices, that can act as a separate and even remote site for data transfer with a computer system.

Terminal Mode: An operating state of the SSC in which the firmware bypasses the Apple II's central processor, and makes the Apple act as a simple terminal capable of generating all of the ASCII characters.

Transmit Data Register: A write-only register in the ACIA (at hexadecimal location \$C088+s0) that holds the current character to be transmitted.

True: Positive voltage in positive-true logic; zero or negative voltage in negative-true logic. Assertion of an arbitrary signal or condition.

XOFF: An ASCII character (decimal 19; Appendix D) sent by a receiving device to a transmitting device to halt transmission of characters.

XON: An ASCII character (decimal 17; Appendix D) used in the XON/XOFF protocol as a go-ahead character from the receiving device to the sending device after an XOFF has been sent to halt transmission.

FIGURES AND TABLES

Chapter 1

GETTING STARTED

- | | | |
|---|------------|---|
| 1 | Figure 1-1 | Photo of the Super Serial Card |
| 2 | Figure 1-2 | Line Drawing of the SSC |
| 3 | Figure 1-3 | Components of the Internal Cable and Clamp Assembly |
| 4 | Figure 1-4 | Sliding the "Key" into the Groove |
| 4 | Figure 1-5 | Internal Cable Attached Correctly to SSC |

Chapter 2

PRINTER MODE

- | | | |
|----|------------|--|
| 5 | Figure 2-1 | SSC Set for Printer Mode |
| 10 | Figure 2-2 | SSC in Slot #1 and Clamp Assembly in Notch |
| 6 | Table 2-1 | Commonly Used Switch Settings for Printer Mode |
| 7 | Table 2-2 | Baud Rate Switch Settings |
| 8 | Table 2-3 | Line Width and Video Switch Settings |
| 14 | Table 2-4 | Printer Mode Commands |
| 15 | Table 2-5 | Baud Rate Selections |
| 15 | Table 2-6 | Data Format Selections |
| 16 | Table 2-7 | Parity Selections |
| 16 | Table 2-8 | Time Delay Selections |
| 18 | Table 2-9 | Lowercase Character Displays |

Chapter 3

COMMUNICATIONS MODE

- | | | |
|----|------------|---|
| 21 | Figure 3-1 | SSC Set for Communications Mode |
| 26 | Figure 3-2 | SSC in Slot #2 and Clamp Assembly in Notch |
| 22 | Table 3-1 | Commonly Used Switch Settings for Communications Mode |
| 23 | Table 3-2 | Baud Rate Switch Settings |
| 23 | Table 3-3 | Data Format Selections |
| 29 | Table 3-4 | Summary of Communications Mode Commands |
| 30 | Table 3-5 | Baud Rate Selections |
| 30 | Table 3-6 | Data Format Selections |
| 31 | Table 3-7 | Parity Selections |
| 32 | Table 3-8 | Time Delay Selections |
| 33 | Table 3-9 | Lowercase Character Displays |
| 35 | Table 3-10 | Special ASCII Character Generation |
| 35 | Table 3-11 | Terminal Mode Commands |

Chapter 4

HOW THE SSC WORKS

| | | |
|----|------------|---|
| 39 | Figure 4-1 | Parallel Data Transfer |
| 39 | Figure 4-2 | Serial Data Transfer |
| 39 | Figure 4-3 | Parallel-to-Serial Data Conversion |
| 40 | Figure 4-4 | RS-232-C Serial Data Format |
| 42 | Figure 4-5 | An RS-232-C Setup with Modems |
| 43 | Figure 4-6 | An RS-232-C Setup with a Modem Eliminator |
| 43 | Figure 4-7 | SSC Operating Modes |
| 44 | Figure 4-8 | SSC Configurations |
| 45 | Figure 4-9 | Overall Block Diagram of the SSC |
| 38 | Table 4-1 | Binary and Decimal Digits and Quantities |
| 41 | Table 4-2 | RS-232-C Signals as Interpreted by the Sender |
| 41 | Table 4-3 | RS-232-C Signals as Interpreted by the Receiver |
| 46 | Table 4-4 | SSC Address Remapping |
| 47 | Table 4-5 | Registers in SSC Peripheral I/O Space |

Appendix A

FIRMWARE

| | | |
|----|------------|--|
| 50 | Table A-1 | I/O Routine Offsets and Registers under Pascal 1.1 |
| 51 | Table A-2 | Bytes Used for Device Identification |
| 51 | Table A-3 | Device Class Digit |
| 52 | Table A-4 | Memory Usage Map |
| 52 | Table A-5 | Zero-Page Locations Used by SSC |
| 53 | Table A-6 | Scratchpad RAM Locations Used by SSC |
| 54 | Table A-7 | SSC Registers in Peripheral Card I/O Space |
| 55 | Table A-8 | Monitor ROM Entry Points Used by SSC |
| 55 | Table A-9 | BASIC Entry Points Used by SSC |
| 56 | Table A-10 | Pascal 1.0 Entry Points Used by SSC |
| 57 | Table A-11 | Pascal 1.1 Offsets Used by SSC |
| 57 | Table A-12 | SSC Special Firmware Locations |

Appendix B

APPLE INTERFACE CARD EMULATION

| | | |
|----|-----------|---|
| 93 | Table B-1 | SIC Switch Settings, PEEKs and POKEs, Part I |
| 94 | Table B-2 | SIC Switch Settings, PEEKs and POKEs, Part II |

Appendix C

SPECIFICATIONS AND SCHEMATICS

| | | |
|----|-----------|---------------------------|
| 98 | Table C-1 | Connector Pin Assignments |
| 99 | Table C-2 | Jumper Block Wiring |

Appendix E

TROUBLESHOOTING HINTS

| | | |
|-----|-----------|---------------------------------|
| 106 | Table E-1 | Problems Detected at the Device |
| 107 | Table E-2 | Problems Detected at the Apple |

Appendix F

ERROR CODES

| | | |
|-----|-----------|-------------------------|
| 109 | Table F-1 | STSBYTE Bit Definitions |
| 110 | Table F-2 | Error Codes and Bits |

INDEX

A

A register 50
ACIA 45, 47, 48, 91, 95, 96,
97
 function 47
 registers 49, 54
 status register 109
ACK 91, 94, 102, 106
address
 bus 45
 lines 46
 mapping 46
 space 46
addressing logic 45, 46
answer modem 42
Apple II Communications Card
 (see CIC)
Apple II Communications
 Interface Card (see CIC)
Apple II Parallel Cards 96
Apple II Serial Interface Card
 (see SIC)
APPLE SSC: 8, 12, 27
Applesoft 36, 98
ASCII 24, 34, 38, 95, 96
 code table 101-104
 special characters 35, 36,
 101
assembly language 11, 27, 98
Asynchronous Communications
 Interface Adapter (see ACIA)

B

B command 35, 36
BASIC 8, 11, 12, 17, 18, 19,
27, 31, 33, 36, 92, 101,
104
 entry points 55
 error codes 109, 110
 protocol 50
batch moves 95
baud rate 6, 15, 22, 30
 selection 15, 30
 switch settings 7, 23, 47,
 91, 92, 93, 98
binary 37, 101
 data 24, 38

binary/decimal representation
38

bit 7, 23, 37
 data 30, 40, 93
 parity 40
 start 40
 stop 30, 40, 92, 94

block
 diagram, SSC 45
 moves 91

branch table locations,
 Pascal 1.1 50

break signal 36

buffer 45, 47

bus
 address 45
 data 45, 48
 parallel 48

byte 38
 device signature 51

C

cable

 connector 10, 26
 external 1, 10, 26
 internal 1, 9, 24, 45
 socket 2

capitalize 34

carriage return delay 7, 17,
94, 95, 96

carrier

 lost 110
 signal 42

chaining 34

character

 displays 33
 enquire 95

characters

 echo on screen 34
 lowercase 34, 102
 uppercase 34, 102
 capitalize 34

CIC 36, 91, 96

clamp assembly 2, 3

Clear To Send (see CTS)

code 38

column overflow 17

command

 character

 change 13, 28

 Communications Mode 28,
 102

- Printer Mode 12, 102
- send 12
- data format 15
- format 12, 27
 - Communications Mode 27-28
- register 45
- remote-control 102
- reset 15, 95
- set time delay 16
- summary, Terminal Mode 35
- translate 91
- commands
 - CIC 96
 - Communications Mode 27, 29, 102
 - Parallel Card 96
 - Printer Mode 11, 14
 - Terminal Mode 22, 35
- communications 37
 - mode 21-33, 91, 95, 96
- Communications Card, Apple II (see CIC)
- Communications Mode 22, 26
 - command
 - character 28
 - summary 28-29
 - commands 27
 - control character 27
- components SSC 45
- configurations, SSC 44
- connector
 - pin assignments 98
 - slots 9, 25, 98
- control
 - character
 - communications mode 27
 - suppress 18, 33
 - logic 45, 46
 - register 45
- <CR> 7, 17, 94, 95, 96, 102, 107
- <CTRL-A> 27, 102
- <CTRL-I> 8, 12, 102
- <CTRL-R> 28, 35, 96, 102
- <CTRL-S> 28, 96, 102
- <CTRL-SHIFT-M> 101, 103
- <CTRL-SHIFT-N> 103
- <CTRL-T> 28, 35, 96, 102
- CTS 41, 42, 43, 47, 48, 95, 98, 99

D

- data 37
 - ASCII 24
 - binary 24
 - bit 7, 15, 23, 24, 30, 40, 93
 - bus 45, 48
 - bus buffer 45
 - conversion 39, 47
 - format 7, 23, 28, 30, 40, 47, 91, 92, 93
 - command 15
 - RS-232-C 40
 - selection 15, 23, 30
 - input 48, 96
 - output 48
 - serial 48
 - terminal 40
 - transfer 47
- Data Carrier Detect (see DCD)
- Data Communication Equipment (see DCE)
- Data Set Ready (see DSR)
- Data Terminal Equipment (see DTE)
- Data Terminal Ready (see DTR)
- DB-25 connector 10, 26, 97, 99
 - pin assignments 98
- DCD 41, 42, 43, 47, 48, 95, 98, 99
- DCE 41, 48, 105
- decimal error codes 110
- default parity 16
- demodulator 41
- device
 - class digit 51
 - identification 51
 - remote 19, 96
 - signature byte 51
- DEVICE SELECT 46, 47
- disable 12, 28
- DOS 8, 11, 27
- Dow Jones News & Quotes Reporter 22, 36
 - setup program for 36
- DSR 41, 42, 43, 48, 95, 98, 99
- DTE 41, 42, 48, 105
- DTR 41, 42, 43, 95, 98, 99

E

- E command 31, 34, 35
- echoing 34, 35
- edge connector 2
- EIA 40
- 80-column-display 34
- Electronic Industries Association (see EIA)
- emulation
 - modes 91-96
 - old Serial Interface Card 91
 - P8 92
 - SIC 92, 102
- enable 12, 28
- enquire character 95
- enter Terminal Mode 35
- entry points
 - BASIC 55
 - hardware 49
 - I/O routine 50
 - monitor ROM 55
 - Pascal 1.0 55, 56
 - Pascal 1.1 55, 56
 - SSC 55
- environment, SSC 97
- error
 - codes 109-110
 - BASIC 110
 - Pascal 110
 - framing 109, 110
 - parity 109, 110
- ENQ 95, 102
- ENQ/ACK 102
- <ESC> 34, 35, 101-104
- <ESC>L 91
- <ESC>U 91
- ETX 91, 94, 95, 102, 106
- ETX/ACK 91, 94, 102, 106
- Expansion ROM, SSC 46, 52
- even parity 16, 31, 40, 92, 93
- external cable 1, 10, 26

F

- F command 17, 31
- FCC rules 10, 26
- <FF> 14, 16, 17, 29, 32
- firmware 34, 47, 49, 109
 - entry points, Pascal 1.0 (SIC) 49
- interrupt handling 50
- listings 57-96

- locations, special 57
- memory usage 53
- protocol, Pascal 1.1 49
- SSC driver 46
- form feed delay 14, 16, 17, 29, 32
- format, data 92, 93
- framing error 109, 110
- full-duplex 35

G

- generate
 - ASCII characters 35
 - <CR> 17, 95, 96
 - <LF> 8, 17, 24, 31, 92, 94
- generic signature 51
- ground 10, 26, 42, 43

H

- half-duplex 35, 36, 95
- handshake 94, 95
- handshaking 19
- hardware 96
 - entry points 49
 - handshaking 19
- hexadecimal 101

I

- IN# 14
- IDS 560 Paper Tiger 6
- indirect addressing 56
- input 37
 - data 48, 96
- installation, SSC 9
- Integer BASIC 36
- interface
 - receive 45
 - transmit 45
- internal
 - cable 1, 9, 24, 45
 - attachment 3
 - clamp assembly 2, 3
 - shielding 10, 26
- interrupt
 - handling 50
 - request 47
 - Pascal 1.0 50

I/O
 routine entry points 50
 scratchpad address 109
 SELECT 46
 space
 peripheral card 52
 registers in 54
 STROBE 46
IORESULT 109

J

jumper block 2, 5, 11, 21, 27,
 42, 45, 48, 95, 99, 105
wiring 99

K

keyboard 11, 18, 27, 33,
 101, 102

L

<LF> 8, 17, 24, 31, 91, 92,
 94, 102
line width 8, 92, 94, 96
linefeed (see <LF>)
listings, firmware 57-96
local 37
lowercase 14, 18, 29, 32-33,
 34, 91, 92, 93, 95, 101,
 102
 character displays 18

M

MARK parity 16, 31, 40, 101
mask <LF> in 17, 31
memory usage map, SSC 53
mode
 communications 21-33, 26,
 91, 96, 102
 emulation 91-96
 P8 93
 P8A 93-94, 102, 106
 printer 5-19, 91, 92, 93-94,
 102
 SSC operating 43
 terminal 22, 34-36, 96, 101,
 102

modem 22, 26, 27, 41, 42, 105
 answer 42
 eliminator 5, 42, 43, 45,
 48, 99, 105
 null 42, 48
 originate 42
MODEM 5, 21, 27, 48, 99
modulator 41
monitor
 Apple II 11
 ROM entry points 55

N

NEC 5510 Spinwriter 6
no parity 31
null modem 42, 48

O

odd parity 16, 31, 40
offsets, Pascal 1.1 57
originate 40
 modem 42
oscillator 45, 47
output 37
 data 48
override switch settings 27
overrun 109, 110

P

P8 91-95
 emulation POKEs 92
 ROM 92, 94, 95
P8A 91
 mode 6, 102, 106
 ROM 92, 94, 95
parallel
 bus 48
 card commands 96
 data 37, 38-39
 I/O card 52
parity 7, 15, 23, 30, 47, 92,
 93
 bit 7, 23, 24, 40
 error 109, 110
 even 40
 MARK 40, 101
 odd 40
 selection 16, 31

SPACE 40
Pascal 11, 12, 27
error codes 109, 110
Pascal 1.0 49
entry points 55, 56
interrupt requests 50
Pascal 1.1 49
branch table locations 50
device
class digit 51
identification 51
signature byte 51
entry points 55, 56
firmware protocol 49
I/O routines 50
offsets 50
offsets 57
PEEK 91, 92, 93-94, 109
peripheral I/O space 49
physical characteristics, SSC
97
pin assignments 98
POKE 19, 91, 92, 93-94, 95
power supply 9, 25
PR# 14
preparing SSC, printer mode 5
printer(s) 6
local 11
using 11
Printer Mode 5-19, 91, 92,
93-94, 95
command character 12, 102
commands 11
summary 13-14
data format 7, 15
switch settings 6
using 11
protocol 102
BASIC 50
Pascal 1.1 firmware 49

Q

Q command 35, 36
Qume 6
quit Terminal Mode 36, 102

R

RAM 45, 49, 92
scratchpad locations 53

receive
interface 45
register 42
Received Data (see RXD)
register
command 45, 54
control 45, 54
receive 42
status/reset 45, 54
transmit 42, 54
transmit/receive 45

registers
A 50, 55-57
ACIA 49, 54
Pascal 1.1 50
peripheral I/O space 47
switch settings 45
X 50, 55-57
Y 50, 55-57
remote 37
device 19, 22, 26, 27, 96
terminal 34
remote-control commands 102
Request To Send (see RTS)
reset 27
command 15, 95
SSC 17, 31
RESET 46
<RETURN> 12, 27, 102
Ring Indicator (RI) 41
ROM 45
SSC Expansion 46, 52
ROM/RAM
address mapping 46
space 46
RS-232-C 40, 43, 47, 48, 95,
105
signals 40-43, 49, 98-99
RTS 41, 42, 43, 95, 98, 99
RXD 41, 42, 43, 98, 99

S

schematic, SSC 45, 100
scratchpad RAM locations 53
SCTS 98, 99
Secondary Clear To Send (see
SCTS)
selection
baud rate 15, 30
data format 15, 23, 30
parity 16, 31
time delay 16, 32

- serial
 - data 37, 39, 40, 48
 - interface card 95
- setting switches 6, 22, 92
- settings, switch 6, 22, 93-94
- shielding, internal 10, 26
- SIC 91, 92
 - emulation mode 92, 102
 - firmware entry points 49
 - P8A mode 102, 106
 - switch settings 93, 94
- 6502 registers 49, 50, 55-57
- slew rate 48
- software compatability 98
- SPACE parity 16, 31, 40, 101
- special
 - characters, ASCII 101
 - circuits, SSC 97
- specifications, SSC 97-98
- specify screen slot 34
- SSC 1, 91, 95, 96, 102
 - block diagram 45
 - cable connector 10
 - preparation 21
 - configurations 44
 - connect
 - printer 7
 - terminal 8
 - controlling 11
 - driver firmware 46
 - emulation 94
 - entry points 50, 55-57
 - environment 97
 - Expansion ROM 46, 52
 - firmware memory usage 53
 - installation 9, 92
 - lowercase 18
 - main components 45
 - operating modes 43
 - peripheral card I/O space 52
 - photo 1
 - physical characteristics 97
 - registers in I/O space 54
 - reset 17, 31
 - RS-232-C signals 99
 - schematic 45, 100
 - scratchpad RAM locations 53
 - slot location 98
 - special circuits 97
 - specifications 97-98
 - switch settings 93-94
 - theory of operation 45
 - unpacking 1
- using
 - Communications Mode 27
 - printer 11
 - Printer Mode 11
 - terminal 11
 - zero-page locations 52
- start bit 7, 23, 40
- status
 - byte (see STSBYTE)
 - register, ACIA 109
- status/reset register 45
- stop bit 7, 15, 23, 24, 30, 40, 92, 94
- STSBYTE 109
- summary
 - Communications Mode commands 28-29
 - Printer Mode commands 14
 - Terminal Mode commands 35
- Super Serial Card (see SSC)
- suppress
 - characters
 - control 33
 - keyboard 18, 33
 - <LF> in 17, 31
- switch settings
 - baud rate 7, 23
 - change 14, 30
 - Communications Mode 22
 - line width 8
 - override 12, 27
 - Printer Mode 6
 - SIC 93-94
 - SSC 93-94
 - video 8
- switches 2
 - Communications Mode 21-22
 - setting 22, 92
 - SSC 45
 - state of 47
 - SW1 48, 54, 56, 57, 92, 93
 - SW1-1 through SW1-4 2, 7, 15, 23, 31, 92, 93, 106
 - SW1-5 and SW1-6 2, 5, 21, 92, 93, 102, 115
 - SW1-7 2, 8, 24, 48, 92, 99
 - SW2 6, 22, 48, 54, 56, 57, 92, 93, 94
 - SW2-1 2, 7, 15, 23-24, 31, 92, 93, 94, 106
 - SW2-2 2, 7, 16, 23-24, 31, 92, 94, 106
 - SW2-3 and SW2-4 2, 8, 23, 92, 94, 106, 107

SW2-5 2, 8, 17, 24, 32,
92, 93, 106
SW2-6 2, 8, 24, 48, 92,
107
SW2-7 2, 8, 24, 48, 92,
99

T

T command 35
tab 19
terminal
 connecting 8
 local 11
 unintelligent 34, 35
TERMINAL 5, 11, 21, 42, 48,
95, 99, 101, 105
Terminal Mode 22, 34-36, 101-
104
 bypass 96
 change to 96
 commands 35
 enter 35, 102
 example 36
 quit 36, 102
theory of operation, SSC 45
time delay
 selection 16, 32
time-sharing 34, 36
translate 94
 command 17, 31, 91
 lowercase 18
transmit
 break signal 36
 interface 45
 register 42
transmit/receive register 45
Transmitted Data (see TXD)
troubleshooting 105-107
 at Apple II 107
 at device 106
TXD 41, 42, 43, 98, 99

U

unintelligent terminal 34, 35,
36
uppercase 14, 18, 29, 33, 34,
91, 92, 102

V

video on/off 8, 92, 94, 96

W

wiring, jumper block 99

X

X command 17, 31, 35, 106
X register 50, 55-57
XOFF 35, 102
 recognition 18, 33
XON 102
XON/XOFF 17, 19, 31, 33, 96,
102

Y

Y register 50, 55-57

Z

Z command 17, 18, 31
zero-page locations, SSC 52



10260 Bandley Drive
Cupertino, California 95014
(408) 996-1010

030-0270-A